VOYAGES

FROM

MONTREAL

THROUGH THE

ontin[illegible]t of North America, etc. etc.

VOYAGES

FROM

MONTREAL,

ON THE RIVER ST. LAURENCE,

THROUGH THE

CONTINENT OF NORTH AMER

TO THE

FROZEN AND PACIFIC OCEANS

In the Years 1789 *and* 1793;

WITH A PRELIMINARY ACCOUNT

OF THE RISE, PROGRESS, AND PRESENT STATE

THE FUR TRADE

OF THAT COUNTRY;

WITH ORIGINAL NOTES AND AN APPENDIX BY BOUGAINVILLE,
MEMBER OF THE FRENCH SENATE;

ILLUSTRATED WITH MAPS;

BY ALEXANDER MACKENZIE, ESQ.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR T. CADELL, JUN. AND W. DAVIES, ST
COBBETT AND MORGAN, PALL-MALL; AND W. CRE
AT EDINBURGH;

BY R. NOBLE, OLD-BAILEY.

M.DCCC.II.

TO

HIS MOST SACRED MAJESTY

GEORGE THE THIR

THIS VOLUME

IS INSCRIBED,

BY *HIS MAJESTY'S*

MOST FAITHFUL SUBJECT,

AND

DEVOTED SERVANT,

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE.

PREFACE.

ON presenting this Volume to my Country, it is not necessary to enter into a particular account of those voyages whose journals form the principal part of it, as they will be found, I trust, to explain themselves. It appears, however, to be a duty, which the Public have a right to expect from me, to state the reasons which have influenced me in delaying the publication of them.

It has been asserted, that a misunderstanding between a person high in office and myself, was the cause of this procrastination. It has also been propagated, that it was occasioned by that precaution which the policy of commerce will sometimes suggest; but they are both equally devoid of foundation. The one is an idle tale; and there could be no solid reason for concealing the circumstances of discoveries, whose arrangements and prosecution were so honourable to my associates and myself, at whose expence they were undertaken. The delay actually arose from the very active and busy mode of life in which I was engaged since the voya

ve been completed; and when, at length, he opportunity arrived, the apprehension of resenting myself to the Public in the character of an Author, for which the course and ccupations of my life have by no means qualified me, made me hesitate in committing my papers to the Press; being much better calculated to perform the voyages, arduous as they might be, than to write an account of them. However, they are now offered to the Public with the submission that becomes me.

I was led, at an early period of life, by commercial views, to the country North-West of Lake Superior, in North America, and being endowed by Nature with an inquisitive mind and enterprising spirit; possessing also a constitution and frame of body equal to the most arduous undertakings, and being familiar with toilsome exertions in the prosecution of mercantile pursuits, I not only ntemplated the practicability of penetrating ross the continent of America, but was nfident in the qualifications, as I was aniated by the desire, to undertake the perilous terprize.

The general utility of such a discovery, has been

been universally acknowledged; while the wishes of my particular friends and commercial associates, that I should proceed in the pursuit of it, contributed to quicken the execution of this favourite project of my own ambition: and as the completion of it extends the boundaries of geographic science, and adds new countries to the realms of British commerce, the dangers I have encountered, and the toils I have suffered, have found their recompence; nor will the many tedious and weary days, or the gloomy and inclement nights which I have passed, have been passed in vain.

The first voyage has settled the dubious point of a practicable North-West passage; and I trust, that it has set that long agitated question at rest, and extinguished the disputes respecting it for ever. An enlarged discussion of that subject will be found to occupy the concluding pages of this volume.

In this voyage, I was not only without the necessary books and instruments, but also felt myself deficient in the sciences of astronomy and navigation: I did not hesitate, therefore, to undertake a winter's voyage to this country, in order to procure the one and acquire the

other. Theſe objects being accompliſhed, I returned, to determine the practicability of a commercial communication through the continent of North America, between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, which is proved by my ſecond journal. Nor do I heſitate to declare my decided opinion, that very great and eſſential advantages may be derived by extending our trade from one ſea to the other.

Some account of the fur trade of Canada from that country, of the native inhabitants, and of the extenſive diſtricts connected with it, forms a preliminary diſcourſe, which will, I truſt, prove intereſting to a nation whoſe general policy is blended with, and whoſe proſperity is ſupported by, the purſuits of commerce. It will alſo qualify the reader to purſue the ſucceeding voyages with ſuperior intelligence and ſatisfaction.

Theſe voyages will not, I fear, afford the variety that may be expected from them; and that which they offered to the eye, is not of a nature to be effectually transferred to the page. Mountains and vallies, the dreary waſte, and wide-ſpreading foreſts, the lakes and rivers ſucceed each other in general deſcription; and, except on the coaſts of

of the Pacific Ocean, where the villages were permanent, and the inhabitants in a great meaſure ſtationary, ſmall bands of wandering Indians are the only people whom I ſhall introduce to the acquaintance of my readers.

The beaver and the buffalo, the mooſe-deer and the elk, which are the principal animals to be found in theſe countries, are already ſo familiar to the naturaliſts of Europe, and have been ſo often as well as correctly deſcribed in their works, that the bare mention of them, as they enlivened the landſcape, or were hunted for food; with a curſory account of the ſoil, the courſe and navigation of lakes and rivers, and their various produce, is all that can be reaſonably expected from me.

I do not poſſeſs the ſcience of the naturaliſt; and even if the qualifications of that character had been attained by me, its curious ſpirit would not have been gratified. I could not ſtop to dig into the earth, over whoſe ſurface I was compelled to paſs with rapid ſteps; nor could I turn aſide to collect the plants which nature might have ſcattered on the way, when my thoughts were anxiouſly employed in making proviſion for the day that

was paſſing over me. I had to encounter perils by land and perils by water; to watch the ſavage who was our guide, or to guard againſt thoſe of his tribe who might meditate our deſtruction. I had, alſo, the paſſions and fears of other to control and ſubdue. To day I had to aſſuage the riſing diſcontents, and on the morrow to cheer the fainting ſpirits, of the people who accompanied me. The toil of our navigation was inceſſant, and oftentimes extreme; and in our progreſs over land we had no protection from the ſeverity of the elements, and poſſeſſed no accommodations or conveniences but ſuch as could be contained in the burden on our ſhoulders, which aggravated the toils of our march, and added to the weariſomeneſs of our way.

Though the events which compoſe my journals may have little in themſelves to ſtrike the imagination of thoſe who love to be aſtoniſhed, or to gratify the curioſity of ſuch as are enamoured of romantic adventures; nevertheleſs, when it is conſidered that I explored thoſe waters which had never before borne any other veſſel than the canoe of the ſavage; and traverſed thoſe deſerts where an European had never before pre-

ſented

ſented himſelf to the eye of its ſwarthy natives; when to theſe conſiderations are added the important objects which were purſued, with the dangers that were encountered, and the difficulties that were ſurmounted to attain them, this work will, I flatter myſelf, be found to excite an intereſt, and conciliate regard, in the minds of thoſe who peruſe it.

The general map which illuſtrates this volume, is reduced by Mr. Arrowſmith from his three-ſheet map of North-America, with the lateſt diſcoveries, which he is about to republiſh. His profeſſional abilites are well known, and no encomium of mine will advance the general and merited opinion of them.

Before I conclude, I muſt beg leave to inform my readers, that they are not to expect the charms of embelliſhed narrative, or animated deſcription; the approbation due to ſimplicity and to truth is all I preſume to claim; and I am not without the hope that this claim will be allowed me. I have deſcribed whatever I ſaw with the impreſſions of the moment which preſented it to me. The ſucceſſive circumſtances of my progreſs are related without exaggeration or diſplay.

I

I have ſeldom allowed myſelf to wander into conjecture; and whenever conjecture has been indulged, it will be found, I truſt, to be accompanied with the temper of a man who is not diſpoſed to think too highly of himſelf: and if at any time I have delivered myſelf with confidence, it will appear, I hope, to be on thoſe ſubjects which, from the habits and experience of my life, will juſtify an unreſerved communication of my opinions. I am not a candidate for literary fame: at the ſame time, I cannot but indulge the hope that this volume, with all its imperfections, will not be thought unworthy the attention of the ſcientific geographer; and that, by unfolding countries hitherto unexplored, and which, I preſume, may now be conſidered as a part of the Britiſh dominions, it will be received as a faithful tribute to the proſperity of my country.

ALEXANDER MACKENZIE.

LONDON,
November 30, 1801.

A MAP OF AMERICA,
between Latitudes 40 and 70 NORTH and Longitudes 45 and 180 WEST,
EXHIBITING MACKENZIE's TRACK
From Montreal to Fort Chipewyan & from thence to the North Sea
in 1789, & to the West Pacific Ocean in 1793.
HUDSONS
BAY
LAKE
SUPERIOR

A

GENERAL HISTORY

OF THE

FUR TRADE

FROM

CANADA TO THE NORTH-WEST.

THE fur trade, from the earlieſt ſettlement of Canada, was conſidered of the firſt importance to that colony. The country was then ſo populous, that, in the vicinity of the eſtabliſhments, the animals whoſe ſkins were precious, in a commercial view, ſoon became very ſcarce, if not altogether extinct. They were, it is true, hunted at former periods, but merely for food and clothing. The Indians, therefore, to procure the neceſſary ſupply, were encouraged to penetrate into the country, and were generally accompanied by ſome of the Canadians, who found means to induce the remoteſt tribes of natives to bring the ſkins which were moſt in demand, to their ſettlements, in the way of trade.

It is not neceſſary for me to examine the cauſe, but

but experience proves that it requires much less time for a civilized people to deviate into the manners and customs of savage life, than for savages to rise into a state of civilization. Such was the event with those who thus accompanied the natives on their hunting and trading excursions; for they became so attached to the Indian mode of life, that they lost all relish for their former habits and native homes. Hence they derived the title of *Coureurs des Bois*, became a kind of pedlars, and were extremely useful to the merchants engaged in the fur trade; who gave them the necessary credit to proceed on their commercial undertakings. Three or four of these people would join their stock, put their property into a birch-bark canoe, which they worked themselves, and either accompanied the natives in their excursions, or went at once to the country where they knew they were to hunt. At length, these voyages extended to twelve or fifteen months, when they returned with rich cargoes of furs, and followed by great numbers of the natives. During the short time requisite to settle their accounts with the merchants, and procure fresh credit, they generally contrived to squander away all their gains, when they returned to renew their favourite mode of life: their views being answered, and their labour sufficiently rewarded, by indulging themselves in extravagance and dissipation during the short space of one month in twelve or fifteen.

This

This indifference about amaſſing property, and the pleaſure of living free from all reſtraint, ſoon brought on a licentiouſneſs of manners which could not long eſcape the vigilant obſervation of the miſſionaries, who had much reaſon to complain of their being a diſgrace to the Chriſtian religion; by not only ſwerving from its duties themſelves, but by thus bringing it into diſrepute with thoſe of the natives who had become converts to it; and, conſequently, obſtructing the great object to which thoſe pious men had devoted their lives. They, therefore, exerted their influence to procure the ſupreſſion of theſe people, and accordingly, no one was allowed to go up the country to traffic with the Indians, without a licence from the government.

At firſt theſe permiſſions were, of courſe, granted only to thoſe whoſe character was ſuch as could give no alarm to the zeal of the miſſionaries: but they were afterwards beſtowed as rewards for ſervices, on officers, and their widows; and they, who were not willing or able to make uſe of them, (which may be ſuppoſed to be always the caſe with thoſe of the latter deſcription) were allowed to ſell them to the merchants, who neceſſarily employed the Coureurs des bois, in quality of their agents; and theſe people, as may be imagined, gave ſufficient cauſe for the renewal of former complaints; ſo that the remedy proved, in fact, worſe than the diſeaſe.

At length, military poſts were eſtabliſhed at the confluence of the different large lakes of Canada, which, in a great meaſure, checked the evil conſequences that followed from the improper conduct of theſe foreſters, and, at the ſame time, protected the trade. Beſides, a number of able and reſpectable men retired from the army, proſecuted the trade in perſon under their reſpective licences, with great order and regularity, and extended it to ſuch a diſtance, as, in thoſe days, was conſidered to be an aſtoniſhing effort of commercial enterprize. Theſe perſons and the miſſionaries having combined their views at the ſame time, ſecured the reſpect of the natives, and the obedience of the people neceſſarily employed in the laborious parts of this undertaking. Theſe gentlemen denominated themſelves commanders, and not traders, though they were intitled to both thoſe characters: and, as for the miſſionaries, if ſufferings and hardſhips in the proſecution of the great work which they had undertaken, deſerved applauſe and admiration, they had an undoubted claim to be admired and applauded: they ſpared no labour and avoided no danger in the execution of their important office; and it is to be ſeriouſly lamented, that their pious endeavours did not meet with the ſucceſs which they deſerved: for there is hardly a trace to be found beyond the cultivated parts, of their meritorious functions.

The

The cauſe of this failure muſt be attributed to a want of due conſideration in the mode employed by the miſſionaries to propagate the religion of which they were the zealous miniſters. They habituated themſelves to the ſavage life, and naturaliſed themſelves to the ſavage manners, and, by thus becoming dependant, as it were, on the natives, they acquired their contempt rather than their veneration. If they had been as well acquainted with human nature, as they were with the articles of their faith, they would have known, that the uncultivated mind of an Indian muſt be diſpoſed by much preparatory method and inſtruction to receive the revealed truths of Chriſtianity, to act under its ſanctions, and be impelled to good by the hope of its reward, or turned from evil by the fear of its puniſhments. They ſhould have began their work by teaching ſome of thoſe uſeful arts which are the inlets of knowledge, and lead the mind by degrees to objects of higher comprehenſion. Agriculture ſo formed to fix and combine ſociety, and ſo preparatory to objects of ſuperior conſideration, ſhould have been the firſt thing introduced among a ſavage people: it attaches the wandering tribe to that ſpot where it adds ſo much to their comforts; while it gives them a ſenſe of property, and of laſting poſſeſſion, instead of the uncertain hopes of the chaſe, and the fugitive produce of uncultivated wilds. Such were the means

by which the forests of Paraguay were converted into a scene of abundant cultivation, and its savage inhabitants introduced to all the advantages of a civilized life.

The Canadian missionaries should have been contented to improve the morals of their own countrymen, so that by meliorating their character and conduct, they would have given a striking example of the effect of religion in promoting the comforts of life to the surrounding savages, and might by degrees have extended its benign influence to the remotest regions of that country, which was the object, and intended to be the scene, of their evangelic labours. But by bearing the light of the Gospel at once to the distance of two thousand five hundred miles from the civilized part of the colonies, it was soon obscured by the cloud of ignorance that darkened the human mind in those distant regions.

The whole of their long route I have often travelled, and the recollection of such a people as the missionaries having been there, was confined to a few superannuated Canadians, who had not left that country since the cession to the English, in 1763, and who particulaly mentioned the death of some, and the distressing situation of them all. But if these religious men did not attain the objects of their persevering piety, they were, during their mission, of great service to the commanders who engaged

gaged in thoſe diſtant expeditions, and ſpread the fur trade as far Weſt as the banks of the Saſkatchiwine river, in 53. North latitude, and longitude 102 Weſt.

At an early period of their intercourſe with the ſavages, a cuſtom was introduced of a very excellent tendency, but is now unfortunately diſcontinued, of not ſelling any ſpirituous liquor to the natives. This admirable regulation was for ſome time obſerved, with all the reſpect due to the religion by which it was ſanctioned, and whoſe ſevereſt cenſures followed the violation of it. A painful penance could alone reſtore the offender to the ſuſpended rites of the ſacrament. The caſuiſtry of trade, however, diſcovered a way to gratify the Indians with their favourite cordial, without incurring the eccleſiaſtical penalties, by giving, inſtead of ſelling it to them.

But notwithſtanding all the reſtrictions with which commerce was oppreſſed under the French government, the fur trade was extended to the immenſe diſtance which has been already ſtated; and ſurmounted many moſt diſcouraging difficulties, which will be hereafter noticed; while, at the ſame time, no exertions were made from Hudſon's Bay to obtain even a ſhare of the trade of a country which, according to the charter of that company, belonged to it, and, from its proximity, is ſo much more acceſſible to the mercantile adventurer.

Of

Of theſe trading commanders, I underſtood, that two attempted to penetrate to the Pacific Ocean, but the utmoſt extent of their journey I could never learn; which may be attributed, indeed, to a failure of the undertaking.

For ſome time after the conqueſt of Canada, this trade was ſuſpended, which muſt have been very advantageous to the Hûdſon's Bay Company as all the inhabitants to the Weſtward of Lake Superior, were obliged to go to them for ſuch articles as their habitual uſe had rendered neceſſary. Some of the Canadians who had lived long with them, and were become attached to a ſavage life, accompanied them thither annually, till mercantile adventurers again appeared from their own country, after an interval of ſeveral years, owing, as I ſuppoſe, to an ignorance of the country in the conquerors, and their want of commercial confidence in the immenſe length of the journey neceſſary to reach the limits beyond which this commerce muſt begin; the riſk of property; the expences attending ſuch a long tranſport; and an ignorance of the language of thoſe who, from their experience, muſt be neceſſarily employed as the intermediate agents between them and the natives. But, notwithſtanding theſe difficulties, the trade, by degrees, began to ſpread over the different parts to which it had been carried by the French, though at a great riſk of the lives, as well as the property, of their new poſ-

ſeſſor

ſeſſors, for the natives had been taught by their former allies to entertain hoſtile diſpoſitions towards the engliſh, from their having been in alliance with their natural enemies the Iroquois; and there were not wanting a ſufficient number of diſcontented, diſappointed people to keep alive ſuch a notion; ſo that for a long time they were conſidered and treated as objects of hoſtility. To prove this diſpoſition of the Indians, we have only to refer to the conduct of Pontiac, at Detroit, and the ſurpriſe and taking of Michilimakinac, about this period.

Hence it aroſe, that it was ſo late as the years 1766, before which, the trade I mean to conſider, commenced from Michilimakinac. The firſt who attempted it were ſatisfied to go the length of the River Cameniſtiquia, about thirty miles to the Eaſtward of the Grande Portage, where the French had a principal eſtabliſhment, and was the line of their communication with the interior country. It was once deſtroyed by fire. Here they went and returned ſucceſsful in the following ſpring to Michilimakinac. Their ſucceſs induced them to renew their journey, and incited others to follow their example. Some of them remained at Cameniſtiquia, while others proceeded to and beyond the Grande Portage, which, ſince that time has become the principal entrepôt of that trade, and is ſituated in a bay, in latitude 48. North, and longitude

gitude 90. Weſt. After paſſing the uſual ſeaſon there, they went back to Michilimakinac as before, and encouraged by the trade, returned in increaſed numbers. One of theſe, Thomas Curry, with a ſpirit of enterprize ſuperior to that of his contemporaries, determined to penetrate to the furtheſt limits of the French diſcoveries in that country; or at leaſt till the froſt ſhould ſtop him. For this purpoſe he procured guides and interpreters, who were acquainted with the country, and with four canoes arrived at Fort Bourbon, which was one of their poſts, at the Weſt end of the Cedar Lake, on the waters of the Saſkatchiwine. His riſk and toil were well recompenſed, for he came back the following ſpring with his canoes filled with fine furs, with which he proceeded to Canada, and was ſatisfied never again to return to the Indian country.

From this period people began to ſpread over every part of the country, particularly where the French had eſtabliſhed ſettlements.

Mr. James Finlay was the firſt who followed Mr. Curry's example, and with the ſame number of canoes, arrived, in the courſe of the next ſeaſon, at Nipawee, the laſt of the French ſettlements on the bank of the Saſkatchiwine River, in latitude nearly 34½ North, and longitude 103 Weſt: he found the good fortune, as he followed, in every reſpect, the example, of his predeceſſor.

As

As may be ſuppoſed, there were now people enough ready to replace them, and the trade was purſued with ſuch avidity, and irregularity, that in a few years it became the reverſe of what it ought to have been. An animated competition prevailed, and the contending parties carried the trade beyond the French limits, though with no benefit to themſelves or neighbours, the Hudſon's-Bay Company; who in the year 1774, and not till then, thought proper to move from home to the Eaſt bank of Sturgeon Lake, in latitude 53. 56. North, and longitude 102. 15. Weſt, and became more jealous of their fellow ſubjects; and, perhaps, with more cauſe, than they had been of thoſe of France. From this period to the preſent time, they have been following the Canadians to their different eſtabliſhments, while, on the contrary, there is not a ſolitary inſtance that the Canadians have followed them; and there are many trading poſts which they have not yet attained. This, however, will no longer be a myſtery when the nature and policy of the Hudſon's-Bay Company is compared with that which has been purſued by their rivals in this trade. — But to return to my ſubject.

This competition, which has been already mentioned, gave a fatal blow to the trade from Canada, and, with other incidental cauſes, in my opinion, contributed to its ruin. This trade was carried on in a very diſtant country, out of the

reach of legal reſtraint, and where there was a free ſcope given to any ways or means in attaining advantage. The conſequence was not only the loſs of commercial benefit to the perſons engaged in it, but of the good opinion of the natives, and the reſpect of their men, who were inclined to follow their example; ſo that with drinking, carouſing, and quarrelling with the Indians along their route, and among themſelves, they ſeldom reached their winter quarters; and if they did, it was generally by dragging their property upon ſledges, as the navigation was cloſed up by the froſt. When at length they were arrived, the object of each was to injure his rival traders in the opinion of the natives as much as was in their power, by miſrepreſentation and preſents, for which the agents employed were peculiarly calculated. They conſidered the command of their employer as binding on them, and however wrong or irregular the tranſaction, the reſponſibility reſted with the principal who directed them. This is Indian law. Thus did they waſte their credit and their property with the natives, till the firſt was paſt redemption, and the laſt was nearly exhauſted; ſo that towards the ſpring in each year, the rival parties found it abſolutely neceſſary to join, and make one common ſtock of what remained, for the purpoſe of trading with the natives, who could entertain no reſpect for perſons who had conducted

themſelves

themſelves with ſo much irregularity and deceit. The winter, therefore was one continued ſcene of diſagreements and quarrels. If any one had the precaution or good ſenſe to keep clear of theſe proceedings, he derived a proportionable advantage from his good conduct, and frequently proved a peace-maker between the parties. To ſuch an height had they carried this licentious conduct, that they were in a continual ſtate of alarm, and were even frequently ſtopped to pay tribute on their route into the country; though they had adopted the plan of travelling together in parties of thirty or forty canoes, and keeping their men armed; which ſometimes, indeed, proved neceſſary for their defence.

Thus was the trade carried on for ſeveral years, and conſequently becoming worſe, and worſe, ſo that the partners, who met them at the Grande Portage, naturally complained of their ill ſucceſs. But ſpecious reaſons were always ready to prove that it aroſe from circumſtances which they could not at that time control; and encouragements were held forth to hope that a change would ſoon take place, which would make ample amends for paſt diſappointments.

It was about this time, that Mr. Joſeph Frobiſher, one of the gentlemen engaged in the trade, determined to penetrate into the country yet unexplored, to the North and Weſtward, and, in the

ſpring of the year 1775, met the Indians from that quarter on their way to Fort Churchill, at Portage de Traite, ſo named from that circumſtance on the banks of the Miſſinipi, or Churchill River, latitude 55. 25. North, longitude 103¾. West. It was, indeed, with ſome difficulty that he could induce them to trade with him, but he at length procured as many furs as his canoes could carry. In this perilous expedition he ſuſtained every kind of hardſhip incident to a journey through a wild and ſavage country, where his ſubſiſtence depended on what the woods and the waters produced. Theſe difficulties, nevertheleſs, did not diſcourage him from returning in the following year, when he was equally ſucceſsful. He then ſent his brother to explore the country ſtill further Weſt, who penetrated as far as the lake of Iſle à la Croſſe, in latitude 55. 26. North, and longitude 108 Weſt.

He, however, never after wintered among the Indians, though he retained a large intereſt in the trade, and a principal ſhare in the direction of it till the year 1798, when he retired to enjoy the fruits of his labours; and, by his hoſpitality, became known to every reſpectable ſtranger who viſited Canada.

The ſucceſs of this gentleman induced others to follow his example, and in the ſpring of the year 1778, ſome of the traders on the Saſkatchiwine River, finding they had a quantity of goods to

ſpare,

ſpare, agreed to put them into a joint ſtock, and gave the charge and management of them to Mr. Peter Pond, who, in four canoes, was directed to enter the Engliſh River, ſo called by Mr. Frobiſher, to follow his track, and proceed ſtill further; if poſſible, to Athabaſca, a country hitherto unknown but from Indian report. In this enterpriſe he at length ſucceeded, and pitched his tent on the banks of the Elk River, by him erroneouſly called the Athabaſca River, about forty miles from the Lake of the Hills, into which it empties itſelf.

Here he paſſed the winter of 1778-9; ſaw a vaſt concourſe of the Kniſteneaux and Chepewyan tribes, who uſed to carry their furs annually to Churchill; the latter by the barren grounds, where they ſuffered innumerable hardſhips, and were ſometimes even ſtarved to death. The former followed the courſe of the lakes and rivers, through a country that abounded in animals, and where there was plenty of fiſh: but though they did not ſuffer from want of food, the intolerable fatigue of ſuch a journey could not be eaſily repaid to an Indian: they were therefore highly gratified by ſeeing people come to their country to relieve them from ſuch long, toilſome, and dangerous journies; and were immediately reconciled to give an advanced price for the articles neceſſary to their comfort and convenience. Mr. Pond's reception and ſucceſs was accordingly beyond his expectation;

and

and he procured twice as many furs as his canoes would carry. They alſo ſupplied him with as much proviſion as he required during his reſidence among them, and ſufficient for his homeward voyage. Such of the furs as he could not embark, he ſecured in one of his winter huts, and they were found the following ſeaſon, in the ſame ſtate in which he left them.

Theſe, however, were but partial advantages, and could not prevent the people of Canada from ſeeing the improper conduct of ſome of their aſſociates, which rendered it dangerous to remain any longer among the natives. Moſt of them who paſſed the winter at the Saſkatchiwine, got to the Eagle hills, where, in the ſpring of the year 1780, a few days previous to their intended departure, a large band of Indians being engaged in drinking about their houſes, one of the traders, to eaſe himſelf of the troubleſome importunities of a native, gave him a doſe of laudanum in a glaſs of grog, which effectually prevented him from giving further trouble to any one, by ſetting him aſleep for ever. This accident produced a fray, in which one of the traders, and ſeveral of the men, were killed, while the reſt had no other means to ſave themſelves but by a precipitate flight, abandoning a conſiderable quantity of goods, and near half the furs which they had collected during the winter and the ſpring.

About

About the ſame time, two of the eſtabliſhments on the Aſſiniboin river, were attacked with leſs juſtice, when ſeveral white men, and a greater number of Indians were killed. In ſhort, it appeared, that the natives had formed a reſolution to extirpate the traders; and, without entering into any further reaſonings on the ſubject, it appears to be incontrovertible, that the irregularity purſued in carrying on the trade has brought it into its preſent forlorn ſituation; and nothing but the greateſt calamity that could have befallen the natives ſaved the traders from deſtruction: this was the ſmall pox, which ſpread its deſtructive and deſolating power, as the fire conſumes the dry graſs of the field. The fatal infection ſpread around with a baneful rapidity which no flight could eſcape, and with a fatal effect that nothing could reſiſt. It deſtroyed with its peſtilential breath whole families and tribes; and the horrid ſcene preſented to thoſe who had the melancholy and afflicting opportunity of beholding it, a combination of the dead, the dying, and ſuch as to avoid the horrid fate of their friends around them, prepared to diſappoint the plague of its prey, by terminating their own exiſtence.

The habits and lives of theſe devoted people, which provided not to-day for the wants of to-morrow, muſt have heightened the pains of ſuch an affliction, by leaving them not only without remedy,

but

but even without alleviation. Nought was left them but to ſubmit in agony and deſpair.

To aggravate the picture, if aggravation were poſſible, may be added, the putrid carcaſes which the wolves, with a furious voracity dragged forth from the huts, or which were mangled within them by the dogs, whoſe hunger was ſatisfied with the disfigured remains of their maſters. Nor was it uncommon for the father of a family, whom the infection had not reached, to call them around him, to repreſent the cruel ſufferings and horrid fate of their relations, from the influence of ſome evil ſpirit who was preparing to extirpate their race; and to incite them to baffle death, with all its horrors, by their own poniards. At the ſame time, if their hearts failed them in this neceſſary act, he was himſelf ready to perform the deed of mercy with his own hand, as the laſt act of his affection, and inſtantly to follow them to the common place of reſt and refuge from human evil.

It was never ſatisfactorily aſcertained by what means this malignant diſorder was introduced, but it was generally ſuppoſed to be from the Miſſiſouri, by a war party.

The conſequence of this melancholy event to the traders muſt be ſelf-evident; the means of diſpoſing of their goods were cut off; and no furs were obtained, but ſuch as had been gathe-

red

red from the habitations of the deceaſed Indians, which could not be very conſiderable : nor did they look from the loſſes of the preſent year, with any encouraging expectations to thoſe which were to come. The only fortunate people conſiſted of a party who had again penetrated to the Northward and Weſtward in 1780, at ſome diſtance up the Miſſinipi or Engliſh River, to Lake la Rouge. Two unfortunate circumſtances, however, happened to them ; which are as follow.

Mr. Wadin, a Swiſs gentleman, of ſtrict probity and known ſobriety, had gone there in the year 1779, and remained during the ſummer 1780. His partners and others, engaged in an oppoſite intereſt, when at the Grande portage, agreed to ſend a quantity of goods on their joint account, which was accepted, and Mr. Pond was propoſed by them to be their repreſentative to act in conjunction with Mr. Wadin. Two men, of more oppoſite characters, could not, perhaps, have been found. In ſhort from various cauſes, their ſituation became very uncomfortable to each other, and mutual ill-will was the natural conſequence : without entering, therefore, into a minute hiſtory of theſe tranſactions, it will be ſufficient to obſerve, that, about the end of the year 1780, or the beginning of the year 1781, Mr. Wadin had received Mr. Pond and one of his own clerks to dinner ; and, in the courſe of the night, the for-

mer was ſhot through the lower part of the thigh, when it was ſaid that he expired from the loſs of blood, and was buried next morning at eight o'clock. Mr. Pond, and the clerk, were tried for this murder at Montreal, and acquitted: neverthelefs, their innocence was not ſo apparent as to extinguiſh the original ſuſpicion.

The other circumſtance was this. In the ſpring of the year, Mr. Pond ſent the abovementioned clerk to meet the Indians from the Northward, who uſed to go annually to Hudſon's Bay; when he eaſily perſuaded them to trade with him, and return back, that they might not take the contagion which had depopulated the country to the Eaſtward of them: but moſt unfortunately they caught it here, and carried it with them, to the deſtruction of themſelves and the neighbouring tribes.

The country being thus depopulated, the traders and their friends from Canada, who, from various cauſes already mentioned, were very much reduced in number, became confined to two parties, who began ſeriouſly to think of making permanent eſtabliſhments on the Miſſinipi river, and at Athabaſca; for which purpoſe, 1781-2, they ſelected their beſt canoe-men, being ignorant that the ſmall pox penetrated that way. The moſt expeditious party got only in time to the Portage la Loche, or Mithy-Ouinigam, which divides the waters of the

Miſſinipi

Miſſinipi from thoſe that fall into the Elk river, to diſpatch one canoe ſtrong handed, and light-loaded, to that country; but, on their arrival there, they found, in every direction, the ravages of the ſmall pox; ſo that, from the great diminution of the natives, they returned in the ſpring with no more than ſeven packages of beaver. The ſtrong woods and mountainous countries afforded a refuge to thoſe who fled from the contagion of the plains; but they were ſo alarmed at the ſurrounding deſtruction, that they avoided the traders, and were diſpirited from hunting except for their ſubſiſtence. The traders, however, who returned into the country in the year 1782-3, found the inhabitants in ſome ſort of tranquillity, and more numerous than they had reaſon to expect, ſo that their ſucceſs was proportionably better.

During the winter of 1783-4, the merchants of Canada, engaged in this trade, formed a junction of intereſts, under the name of the North-Weſt Company, and divided it into ſixteen ſhares, without depoſiting any capital; each party furniſhing a proportion or quota of ſuch articles as were neceſſary to carry on the trade: the reſpective parties agreeing to ſatisfy the friends they had in the country, who were not provided for, according to this agreement, out of the proportions which they held. The management of the whole was accordingly entruſted to Meſſrs. Benjamin and

Joseph Frobisher, and Mr. Simon M'Tavish, two distinct houses, who had the greatest interest and influence in the country, and for which they were to receive a stipulated commission in all transactions.

In the spring, two of those gentlemen went to the Grande Portage with their credentials, which were confirmed and ratified by all the parties having an option, except Mr. Peter Pond, who was not satisfied with the share allotted him. Accordingly he, and another gentleman, Mr. Peter Pangman, who had a right to be a partner, but for whom no provision had been made, came to Canada, with a determination to return to the country, if they could find any persons to join them, and give their scheme a proper support.

The traders in the country, and merchants at Montreal, thus entered into a co-partnership, which, by these means, was consolidated and directed by able men, who, from the powers with which they were entrusted, could carry on the trade to the utmost extent it would bear. The traders in the country, therefore, having every reason to expect that their past and future labours would be recompensed, forgot all their former animosities, engaged with the utmost spirit and activity, to forward the general interest; so that, in the following year, they met their agents at the Grande Portage, with their canoes laden with rich furs

from

from the different parts of that immenſe tract of country. But this ſatisfaction was not to be enjoyed without ſome interruption; and they were mortified to find that Mr. Pangman had prevailed on Meſſrs. Gregory and Macleod to join him, and give him their ſupport in the buſineſs, though deſerted by Mr. Pond, who accepted the terms offered by his former aſſociates.

In the counting houſe of Mr. Gregory I had been five years; and at this period had left him, with a ſmall adventure of goods, with which he had entruſted me, to ſeek my fortune at Detroit. He, without any ſolicitation on my part, had procured an inſertion in the agreement, that I ſhould be admitted a partner in this buſineſs,on condition that I would proceed to the Indian country in the following ſpring, 1785. His partner came to Detroit to make me ſuch a propoſition. I readily aſſented to it, and immediately proceeded to the Grande Portage, where I joined my aſſociates.

We now found that independent of the natural difficulties of the undertaking, we ſhould have to encounter every other which they, who were already in poſſeſſion of the trade of the country, could throw in our way, and which their circumſtances enabled them to do. Nor did they doubt, from their own ſuperior experience, as well as that of their clerks and men, with their local know-

ledge

ledge of the country and its inhabitants, that they ſhould ſoon compel us to leave the country to them. The event, however, did not juſtify their expectations; for, after the ſevereſt ſtruggle ever known in that part of the world, and ſuffering every oppreſſion which a jealous and rival ſpirit could inſtigate; after the murder of one of our clerks, who received a bullet through his powder horn, in the execution of his duty, they were compelled to allow us a ſhare of the trade. As we had already incurred a loſs, this union was, in every reſpect, a deſirable event to us, and was concluded in the month of July 1787.

This commercial eſtabliſhment was now founded on a more ſolid baſis than any hitherto known in the country; and it not only continued in full force, vigour, and proſperity, in ſpite of all interference from Canada, but maintained at leaſt an equal ſhare of advantage with the Hudſon's-Bay Company, notwithſthanding the ſuperiority of their local ſituation. The following account of this ſelf-erected concern will manifeſt the cauſe of its ſucceſs.

It aſſumed the title of the North-Weſt Company, and was no more than an aſſociation of commercial men, agreeing among themſelves to carry on the fur trade, unconnected with any other buſineſs, though many of the parties engaged had extenſive concerns altogether foreign

to

to it. It may be ſaid to have been ſupported entirely upon credit; for, whether the capital belonged to the proprietor, or was borrowed, it equally bore intereſt, for which the aſſociation was annually accountable. It conſiſted of twenty ſhares, unequally divided among the perſons concerned. Of theſe, a certain proportion was held by the people who managed the buſineſs in Canada, and were ſtiled agents for the Company. Their duty was to import the neceſſary goods from England, ſtore them at their own expence at Montreal, get them made up into the articles ſuited to the trade, pack and forward them, and ſupply the caſh that might be wanting for the outfits; for which they received, independent of the profit on their ſhares, a commiſſion on the amount of the accounts, which they were obliged to make out annually, and keep the adventure of each year diſtinct. Two of them went annually to the Grande Portage, to manage and tranſact the buſineſs there, and on the communication at Detroit, Michilimakinac, St Mary's, and at Montreal, where they received, ſtored, packed up, and ſhipped the company's furs for England, on which they had alſo a ſmall commiſſion. The remaining ſhares were held by the proprietors, who were obliged to winter and manage the buſineſs of the concern with the Indians, and their reſpective clerks, &c. They were not ſuppoſed to be under any obligation to furniſh

furniſh capital, or even credit. If they obtained any capital by the trade, it was to remain in the hands of the agents; for which they were allowed intereſt. Some of them, from their long ſervices and influence, held double ſhares, and were allowed to retire from the buſineſs at any period of the exiſting concern, with one of thoſe ſhares, naming any young man in the company's ſervice to ſucceed him in the other. Seniority and merit were, however, conſidered as affording a claim to the ſucceſſion, which, nevertheleſs, could not be diſpoſed of without the concurrence of the majority of the concern, who, at the ſame time relieved the ſeceding perſon from any reſponſibility reſpecting the ſhare that he transferred, and accounted for it according to the annual value or rate of the property; ſo that the ſeller could have no advantage but that of getting the ſhare of ſtock which he retained realiſed, and receiving for the transferred ſhare what was fairly determined to be the worth of it. The former was alſo diſcharged from all duty, and became a dormant partner. Thus, all the young men who were not provided for at the beginning of the contract, ſucceeded in ſucceſſion to the character and advantages of partners. They entered into the Company's ſervice for five or ſeven years, under ſuch expectations, and their reaſonable proſpects were ſeldom diſappointed: there were, indeed, inſtances when they ſucceeded

ſucceeded to ſhares, before their apprenticeſhip was expired, and it frequently happened that they were provided for while they were in a ſtate of articled clerkſhip. Shares were transferable only to the concern at large, as no perſon could be admitted as a partner who had not ſerved his time to the trade. The dormant partner indeed might diſpoſe of his intereſt to any one he choſe, but if the tranſaction were not acknowledged by his aſſociates, the purchaſer could only be conſidered as his agent or attorney. Every ſhare had a vote and two thirds formed a majority. This regular and equitable mode of providing for the clerks of the company, excited a ſpirit of emulation in the diſcharge of their various duties, and in fact, made every agent a principal, who perceived his own proſperity to be immediately connected with that of his employers. Indeed, without ſuch a ſpirit, ſuch a trade could not have become ſo extended and advantageous, as it has been and now is.

In 1788, the groſs amount of the adventure for the year did not exceed forty thouſand pounds, * but by the exertion, enterpriſe, and induſtry of the proprietors, it was brought in eleven years to

* This might be properly called the ſtock of the company, as it included, with the expenditure of the year, the amount of the property unexpended, which had been appropriated for the adventure of that year, and was carried on to the account of the following adventure.

triple that amount and upwards; yielding proportionate profits, and ſurpaſſing, in ſhort, any thing known in America.

Such, therefore, being the proſperous ſtate of the company, it, very naturally, tempted others to interfere with the concern in a manner by no means beneficial to the company, and commonly ruinous to the undertakers.

In 1798 the concern underwent a new form, the ſhares were increaſed to forty-ſix, new partners being admitted, and others retiring. This period was the termination of the company, which was not renewed by all the parties concerned in it, the majority continuing to act upon the old ſtock, and under the old firm; the others beginning a new one; and it now remains to be decided, whether two parties, under the ſame regulations and by the ſame exertions, though unequal in number, can continue to carry on the buſineſs to a ſucceſsful iſſue. The contrary opinion has been held, which, if verified, will make it the intereſt of the parties again to coaleſce; for neither is deficient in capital to ſupport their obſtinacy in a loſing trade, as it is not to be ſuppoſed that either will yield on any other terms than perpetual participation.

It will not be ſuperfluous in this place, to explain the general mode of carrying on the fur trade.

The agents are obliged to order the neceſſary goods

goods from England in the month of October, eighteen months before they can leave Montreal; that is, they are not ſhipped from London until the ſpring following, when they arrive in Canada in the ſummer. In the courſe of the following winter they are made up into ſuch articles as are required for the ſavages; they are then packed into parcels of ninety pounds weight each, but cannot be ſent from Montreal until the May following; ſo that they do not get to market until the enſuing winter, when they are exchanged for furs, which come to Montreal the next fall, and from thence are ſhipped, chiefly to London, where they are not ſold or paid for before the ſucceeding ſpring, or even as late as June; which is forty-two months after the goods were ordered in Canada; thirty-ſix after they had been ſhipped from England, and twenty-four after they had been forwarded from Montreal; ſo that the merchant, allowing that he has twelve months credit, does not receive a return to pay for thoſe goods, and the neceſſary expences attending them, which is about equal to the value of the goods themſelves, till two years after they are conſidered as caſh, which makes this a very heavy buſineſs. There is even a ſmall proportion of it that requires twelve months longer to bring round the payment, owing to the immenſe diſtance it is carried, and from the ſhortneſs of the ſeaſons, which prevents the furs, even after

they

they are collected, from coming out of the country for that period *.

The articles neceſſary for this trade, are coarſe woollen cloths of different kinds; milled blankets of different ſizes; arms and ammunition; twiſt and carrot tobacco; Mancheſter goods; linens, and coarſe ſheetings; thread, lines and twine; common hardware; cutlery and ironmongery of ſeveral deſcriptions; kettles of braſs and copper, and ſheet-iron; ſilk and cotton handkerchiefs; hats, ſhoes and hoſe; calicoes and printed cottons, &c. Spirituous liquors and proviſions are purchaſed in Canada. Theſe, and the expence of tranſport to and from the Indian country, including wages to clerks, interpreters, guides, and canoemen, with the expence of making up the goods for the market, form about half the annual amount againſt the adventure.

* This will be better illuſtrated by the following ſtatement: We will ſuppoſe the goods for 1798;

The orders for the goods are ſent to this country	25th Oct. 1796.
They are ſhipped from London.	March 1797.
They arrive in Montreal.	June 1797.
They are made up in the courſe of that ſummer and winter.	
They are ſent from Montreal.	May 1798.
They arrive in the Indian country, and are exchanged for furs the following winter.	1798-9.
Which furs come to Montreal.	Sept. 1799.
And are ſhipped for London, where they are ſold in March and April, and paid for in May or June. .	1800.

This

This expenditure in Canada ultimately tends to the encouragement of Britiſh manufactory, for thoſe who are employed in the different branches of this buſineſs, are enabled by their gains to purchaſe ſuch Britiſh articles as they muſt otherwiſe forego.

The produce of the year of which I am now ſpeaking, conſiſted of the following furs and peltries:

106,000	Beaver ſkins	6000	Lynx ſkins,
2100	Bear ſkins,	600	Wolverine ſkins,
1500	Fox ſkins,	1650	Fiſher ſkins,
4000	Kitt Fox ſkins,	100	Rackoon ſkins,
4600	Otter ſkins,	3800	Wolf ſkins,
17,000	Muſquaſh ſkins,	700	Elk ſkins,
32,000	Marten ſkins,	750	Deer ſkins,
1800	Mink ſkins,	1200	Deer ſkins, dreſſed,
500	Buffalo robes, and a quantity of caſtorum.		

Of theſe were diverted from the Britiſh market, being ſent through the United States to China, 13,364 ſkins, fine beaver, weighing 19283 pounds; 1250 fine otters, and 1724 kitt foxes. They would have found their way to the China market at any rate, but this deviation from the Britiſh channel aroſe from the following circumſtance:

An adventure of this kind was undertaken by a reſpectable houſe in London, half concerned with the North-Weſt Company in the year 1792.

The

The furs were of the beſt kind, and ſuitable to the market; and the adventurers continued this connexion for five ſucceſſive years, to the annual amount of forty thouſand pounds. At the winding up of 1792, 1793, 1794, 1795, in the year 1797, (the adventure of 1796 not being included, as the furs were not ſent to China, but diſpoſed of in London), the North-Weſt Company experienced a loſs of upwards of £40,000 (their half,) which was principally owing to the difficulty of getting home the produce procured in return for the furs from China, in the Eaſt India Company's ſhips, together with the duty payable, and the various reſtrictions of that company. Whereas, from America there are no impediments; they get immediately to market, and the produce of them is brought back, and perhaps ſold in the courſe of twelve months. From ſuch advantages the furs of Canada will no doubt find their way to China by America, which would not be the caſe if Britiſh ſubjects had the ſame privileges that are allowed to foreigners, as London would then be found the beſt and ſafeſt market.

But to return to our principal ſubject. — We ſhall now proceed to conſider the number of men employed in the concern: viz, fifty clerks, ſeventy-one interpreters and clerks, one thouſand one hundred and twenty canoe men, and thirty-five guides.

guides. Of theſe, five clerks, eighteen guides, and three hundred and fifty canoe men, were employed for the ſummer ſeaſon in going from Montreal to the Grande Portage, in canoes, part of whom proceeded from thence to Rainy Lake as will be hereafter explained, and are called Pork-eaters, or Goers and Comers. Theſe were hired in Canada or Montreal, and were abſent from the firſt of May till the latter end of September. For this trip the guides had from eight hundred to a thouſand livres, and a ſuitable equipment; the foreman and ſteerſman from five to ſix hundred livres; the middlemen from two hundred and fifty to three hundred and fifty livres, with an equipment of one blanket, one ſhirt, and one pair of trowſers; and were maintained during that period at the expence of their employers. Independent of their wages, they were allowed to traffic, and many of them earned to the amount of their wages. About one third of theſe went to winter, and had more than double the above wages and equipment. All the winterers were hired by the year, and ſometimes for three years; and of the clerks many were apprentices, who were generally engaged for five or ſeven years, for which they had only one hundred pounds, proviſion and clothing. Such of them who could not be provided for as partners, at the expiration of this time, were allowed from one hundred pounds to three hundred pounds per an-

num;

num; with all neceſſaries, till proviſion was made for them. Thoſe who acted in the two-fold capacity of clerk and interpreter, or were ſo denominated, had no other expectation than the payment of wages to the amount of from one thouſand livres per annum, with clothing and proviſions. The guides, who are a very uſeful ſet of men, acted alſo in the additional capacity of interpreters, and had a ſtated quantity of goods, conſidered as ſufficient for their wants, their wages being from one to three thouſand livres. The canoe men are of two deſcriptions, foremen and ſteerſmen, and middlemen. The two firſt were allowed annually one thouſand two hundred, and the latter four hundred, livres each. The firſt claſs had what is called an equipment, conſiſting of two blankets, two ſhirts, two pair of trowſers, two handkerchiefs, fourteen pounds of carrot tobacco, and ſome trifling articles. The latter had ten pounds of tobacco, and all the other articles: thoſe are called North Men, or Winterers; and to the laſt claſs of people were attached upwards of ſeven hundred Indian women and children, victualled at the expence of the company.

The firſt claſs of people are hired in Montreal five months before they ſet out, and receive their equipments, and one third of their wages in advance; and an adequate idea of the labour they undergo may be formed from the following account of the

country through which they paſs, and their manner of proceeding.

The neceſſary number of canoes being purchaſed, at about three hundred livres each, the goods formed into packages, and the lakes and rivers free of ice, which they uſually are in the beginning of May, they are then diſpatched from La Chine, eight miles above Montreal, with eight or ten men in each canoe, and their baggage; and ſixty-five packages of goods, ſix hundred weight of biſcuit, two hundred weight of pork, three buſhels of peaſe, for the men's proviſion; two oil cloths to cover the goods, a ſail, &c. an axe, a towing-line, a kettle, and a ſponge to bail out the water, with a quantity of gum, bark, and watape, to repair the veſſel. An European on ſeeing one of theſe ſlender veſſels thus laden, heaped up, and ſunk with her gunwale within ſix inches of the water, would think his fate inevitable in ſuch a boat, when he reflected on the nature of her voyage; but the Canadians are ſo expert that few accidents happen.

Leaving La Chine, they proceed to St. Ann's, within two miles of the Weſtern extremity of the iſland of Montreal, the lake of the two mountains being in ſight, which may be termed the commencement of the Utawas River. At the rapid of St. Ann they are obliged to take out part, if not the whole of their lading. It is from this ſpot that the Canadians conſider they take their departure,

as it poſſeſſes the laſt church on the iſland, which is dedicated to the tutelar ſaint of voyagers.

The lake of the two mountains is about twenty miles long, but not more than three wide, and ſurrounded by cultivated fields, except the Seignory belonging to the clergy, though nominally in poſſeſſion of the two tribes of Iroquois and Algonquins, whoſe village is ſituated on a delightful point of land under the hills, which, by the title of mountains, give a name to the lake. Near the extremity of the point their church is built, which divides the village in two parts, forming a regular angle along the water ſide. On the Eaſt is the ſtation on the Algonquins, and on the Weſt, one of the Iroquois, conſiſting in all of about five hundred warriors. Each party has its miſſionary, and divine worſhip is performed according to the rites of the Roman Catholic religion, in their reſpective languages in the ſame church: and ſo aſſiduous have their paſtors been, that these people have been inſtructed in reading and writing in their own language, and are better inſtructed than the Canadian inhabitants of the country of the lower ranks: but notwithſtanding theſe advantages, and though the eſtabliſhment is nearly coeval with the colonization of the country, they do not advance towards a ſtate of civilization but retain their ancient habits, language, and cuſtoms, and are becoming every day more depraved, indigent, and inſignificant.

The

The country around them, though very capable of cultivation, preſents only a few miſerable patches of ground, ſown by the women with maize and vegetables. During the winter ſeaſon, they leave their habitations, and pious paſtors, to follow the chaſe, according to the cuſtom of their forefathers. Such is, indeed, the ſtate of all the villages near the cultivated parts of Canada. But we ſhall now leave them to proceed on our voyage.

At the end of the lake the water contracts into the Utawas River, which, after a courſe of fifteen miles, is interrupted by a ſucceſſion of rapids and caſcades for upwards of ten miles, at the foot of which the Canadian Seignories terminate; and all above them were waſte land, till the concluſion of the American war, when they were ſurveyed by order of government, and granted to the officers and men of the eighty-fourth regiment, when reduced; but principally to the former, and conſequently little inhabited, though very capable of cultivation.

The voyagers are frequently obliged to unload their canoes, and carry the goods upon their backs, or rather ſuſpended in ſlings from their heads. Each man's ordinary load is two packages, though ſome carry three. Here the canoe is towed by a ſtrong line. There are ſome places where the ground will not admit of their carrying the whole; they then make two trips, that is, leave half their lading, and go and land it at the diſtance required;

 and

and then return for that which was left. In this diſtance are three carrying-places, the length of which depends in a great meaſure upon the ſtate of the water, whether higher or lower; from laſt of theſe the river is about a mile and a wide, and has a regular current for about ſixty miles, when it ends at the firſt Portage de Chaudiere, where the body of water falls twenty-five feet, over cragged, excavated rocks, in a moſt wild, romantic manner. At a ſmall diſtance below, is the river Rideau on the left, falling over a perpendicular rock, near forty feet high, in one ſheet, aſſuming the appearance of a curtain; and from which circumſtance it derives its name. To this extent the lands have been ſurveyed, as before obſerved, and are very fit for culture. Many loyaliſts are ſettled upon the river Rideau, and have, I am told, thriving plantations. Some American families preferring the Britiſh territory, have alſo eſtabliſhed themſelves along a river on the oppoſite ſide, where the ſoil is excellent. Nor do I think the period is far diſtant, when the lands will become ſettled from this vicinity to Montreal.

Over this portage, which is ſix hundred and forty-three paces long, the canoe and all the lading is carried. The rock is ſo ſteep and difficult of acceſs, that it requires twelve men to take the canoe out of the water: it is then carried by ſix men, two at each end on the ſame ſide, and two under the

the opposite gunwale in the middle. From hence to the next is but a ſhort diſtance, in which they make two trips to the ſecond Portage de Chaudiere, which is ſeven hundred paces to carry the lading alone. From hence to the next and laſt Chaudiere, or Portage des Chenes, is about ſix miles, with a very ſtrong current, where the goods are carried ſeven hundred and forty paces; the canoe being towed up by the line, when the water is not very high. We now enter Lac des Chaudieres, which is computed to be thirty miles in length. Though it is called a lake, there is a ſtrong draught downwards, and its breadth is from two to four miles. At the end of this is the Portage des Chats, over which the canoe and lading are carried two hundred and ſeventy-four paces; and very difficult it is for the former. The river is here barred by a ridge of black rocks, riſing in pinnacles and covered with wood, which, from the ſmall quantity of ſoil that nouriſhes it, is low and ſtinted. The river finds its way over and through theſe rocks, in numerous channels falling fifteen feet and upwards. From hence two trips are made through a ſerpentine channel, formed by the rocks for ſeveral miles, when the current ſlackens, and is accordingly called the Lake des Chats. At the channels of the grand Calumet, which are computed to be at the diſtance of eighteen miles, the current recovers its ſtrength, and proceeds to the Por-

tage

tage Dufort, which is two hundred and forty-five paces long; over which the canoe and baggage are transported. From hence the current becomes more rapid, and requires two trips to the Decharge des Sables *, where the goods are carried hundred and thirty-five paces, and the canoe towed. Then follows the Mountain Portage, where the canoe and lading are alſo carried three hundred and eighty-five paces; then to the Décharge of the Derigé where the goods are carried two hundred and fifty paces; and thence to the grand Calumet. This is the longeſt carrying-place in this river, and is about two thouſand and thirty-five paces. It is a high hill or mountain. From the upper part of this Portage the current is ſteady, and is only a branch of the Utawas River, which joins the main channel, that keeps a more Southern courſe, at the diſtance of twelve computed leagues. Six leagues further it forms Lake Coulonge, which is about four leagues in length: from thence it proceeds through the channels of the Allumettes to the Décharge, where part of the lading is taken out, and carried three hundred and forty-two paces. Then ſucceeds the Portage des Allumettes, which is but twenty-five paces, over a rock difficult of acceſs, and at a very ſhort diſtance

* The place where the goods alone are carried, is called a *Décharge*, and that where goods and canoes are both tranſported overland, is denominated a *Portage*.

tance from the Décharge. From Portage de Chenes to this ſpot, is a fine deer-hunting country, and the land in many parts very fit for cultivation. From hence the river ſpreads wide, and is full of iſlands, with ſome current for ſeven leagues, to the beginning of *Riviere Creuſe*, or Deep River, which runs in the form of a canal, about a mile and an half wide, for about thirty-ſix miles; bounded upon the North by very high rocks, with low land on the South, and ſandy; it is intercepted again by falls and cataracts, ſo that the Portages of the two Joachins almoſt join. The firſt is nine hundred and twenty, ſix paces, the next ſeven hundred and twenty, and both very bad roads. From hence is a ſteady current of nine miles to the River du Moine, where there has generally been a trading houſe; the ſtream then becomes ſtrong for four leagues, when a rapid ſucceeds, which requires two trips. A little way onward is the Décharge, and cloſe to it, the Portage of the Roche Capitaine, ſeven hundred and ninety-ſeven paces in length. From hence two trips are made through a narrow channel of the Roche Capitaine, made by an iſland four miles in length. A ſtrong current now ſucceeds, for about ſix leagues to the Portage of the two rivers, which it about eight hundred and twenty paces; from thence it is three leagues to the Décharge of the Trou, which is three hundred paces. Near adjoining is the rapid of Levellier; from

from whence, including the rapids of Matawoen, where there is no carrying-place, it is about thirty-ſix miles to the forks of the ſame name; in latitude 46¾. North, and longitude 78¾. Weſt, is at the computed diſtance of four hundred from Montreal. At this place the Petite Riviere falls into the Utawas. The latter river comes from a North-Weſterly direction, forming ſeveral lakes in its courſe. The principal of them is Lake Temeſcamang, where there has always been a trading poſt, which may be ſaid to continue, by a ſucceſſion of rivers and lakes, upwards of fifty leagues from the Forks, paſſing near the waters of the Lake Abbitiby, in latitude 48½. which is received by the Mooſe River, that empties itſelf into James Bay.

The Petite Riviere takes a South-Weſt direction, is full of rapids and cataracts to its ſource, and is not more than fifteen leagues in length, in the courſe of which are the following interruptions— The Portage of Plein Champ, three hundred and nineteen paces; the Décharge of the Roſe, one hundred and forty-five paces; the Décharge of Campion, one hundred and eighty-four paces; the Portage of the Groſſe Roche, one hundred and fifty paces; the Portage of Pareſſeux, four hundred and two paces; the Portage of Priarie, two hundred and eighty-ſeven paces; the Portage of La Cave, one hundred paces; Portage of Talon,

two

two hundred and ſeventy-five paces; which, for its length, is the worſt on the communication; Portage Pin de Muſique, four hundred and fifty-ſix paces; next to this is Mauvais de Muſique, where many men have been cruſhed to death by the canoes, and others have received irrecoverable injuries. The laſt in this river is the Turtle Portage, eighty-three paces, on entering the lake of that name, where, indeed, the river may be ſaid to take its source. From the firſt vaſe to the great river, the country has the appearance of having been over-run by fire, and conſiſts in general of huge rocky hills. The diſtance of this Portage which is the height of land, between the waters of the St. Laurence and the Utawas, is one thouſand five hundred and thirteen paces to a ſmall canal in a plain, that is juſt ſufficient to carry the loaded canoe about one mile to the next vaſe, which is ſeven hundred and twenty-five paces. It would be twice this diſtance, but the narrow creek is dammed in the beaver faſhion, to float the canoes to this barrier, through which they paſs, when the river is juſt ſufficient to bear them through a ſwamp of two miles to the laſt vaſe, of one thouſand and twenty-four paces in length. Though the river is increaſed in this part, ſome care is neceſſary to avoid rocks and ſtumps of trees. In about ſix miles is the lake Nepiſingui, which is computed to be twelve leagues long, though the route of the canoes is ſomething more:

H it

it is about fifteen miles wide in the wideſt part, and bounded with rocks. Its inhabitants conſiſt of the remainder of a numerous converted tribe, called Nepiſinguis of the Algonquin nation. Out of it flows the Riviere des François, over rocks of a conſiderable height. In a bay to the Eaſt of this, the road leads over the Portage of the Chaudiere des François, five hundred and forty-four paces, to ſtill water. It muſt have acquired the name of Kettle, from a great number of holes in the ſolid rock of a cylindrical form, and not unlike that culinary utenſil. They are obſervable in many parts along ſtrong bodies of water, and where, at certain ſeaſons, and diſtinct periods, it is well known the water inundates; at the bottom of them are generally found a number of ſmall ſtones and pebbles. This circumſtance juſtifies the concluſion, that at ſome former period theſe rocks formed the bed of a branch of the diſcharge of this lake, although ſome of them are upwards of ten feet above the preſent level of the water at its greateſt height. They are, indeed, to be seen along every great river throughout this wide extended country. The French river is very irregular, both as to its breadth and form, and is ſo interſperſed with iſlands, that in the whole courſe of it the banks are ſeldom viſible. Of its various channels, that which is generally followed by the canoes is obſtructed by the following Portages, viz. des Pins, fifty-two paces; Feauſille, thirty-ſix

thirty-six paces; Parisienne, one hundred paces; Recolet, forty-five paces; and the Petite Feaufille, twenty-five paces. In feveral parts there are guts or channels, where the water flows with great velocity, which are not more than twice the breadth of a canoe. The diftance to Lake Huron is eftimated at twenty-five leagues, which this river enters in the latitude 45. 53. North, that is, at the point of land three or four miles within the lake. There is hardly a foot of foil to be feen from one end of the French river to the other, its banks confifting of hills of entire rock. The coaft of the lake is the fame, but lower, backed at fome diftance by high lands. The courfe runs through numerous iflands to the North of Weft to the river Teffalon, computed to be about fifty leagues from the French river, and which I found to be in latitude 46. 12. 21. North; and from thence croffing, from ifland to ifland, the arm of the lake that receives the water of Lake Superior (which continues the fame courfe), the route changes to the South of Weft ten leagues to the Detour, paffing the end of the ifland of St. Jofeph, within fix miles of the former place. On that ifland there has been a military eftablifhment fince the upper pofts were given up to the Americans in the year 1794; and is the Wefternmoft military pofition which we have in this country. It is a place of no trade, and the greater part, if not the whole of the Indians, come here for no other pur-

 pofe

poſe but to receive the preſents which our government annually allows them. They are from the American territory (except about thirty families, who are the inhabitants of the lake from the French river, and of the Algonquin nation) and trade in their peltries, as they uſed formerly to do at Michilimakinac, but principally with Britiſh ſubjects. The Americans pay them very little attention, and tell them that they keep poſſeſſion of their country by right of conqueſt: that, as their brothers, they will be friends with them while they deſerve it; and that their traders will bring them every kind of goods they require, which they may procure by their induſtry.

Our commanders treat them in a very different manner, and, under the character of the repreſentatives of their father; (which parental title the natives give to his preſent Majeſty, the common father of all his people) preſent them with ſuch things as the actual ſtate of their ſtores will allow.

How far this conduct, if continued, may, at a future exigency, keep theſe people in our intereſt, if they are even worthy of it, is not an object of my preſent conſideration: at the ſame time, I cannot avoid expreſſing my perfect conviction, that it would not be of the leaſt advantage to our preſent or future commerce in that country, or to the people themſelves; as it only tends to keep many of them in a ſtate of idleneſs about our military eſtabliſh-

ments.

nents. The ammunition which they receive is employed to kill game, in order to procure rum in return, though their families may be in a ſtarving condition: hence it is, that, in conſequence of ſlothful and diſſolute lives, their numbers are in a very perceptible ſtate of diminution.

From the Detour to iſland of Michilimakinac, at the confluence of the Lakes Huron and Michigan, in latitude 45.54. North is about forty-miles. To keep the direct courſe to Lake Superior, the north ſhore from the river Teſſalon ſhould be followed; croſſing to the North-Weſt end of St. Joſeph, and paſſing between it and the adjacent iſlands, which makes a diſtance of fifty miles to the fall of St. Mary, at the foot of which, upon the South ſhore, there is a village, formerly a place of great reſort for the inhabitants of Lake Superior, and conſequently of conſiderable trade: it is now, however, dwindled to nothing, and reduced to about thirty families, of the Algonquin nation, who are one half of the year ſtarving, and the other half intoxicated, and ten or twelve Canadians, who have been in the Indian country from an early period of life, and intermarried with the natives who have brought them families. Their inducement to ſettle there, was the great quantity of white fiſh that are to be taken in and about the falls, with very little trouble, particularly in the autumn, when that fiſh leaves the lakes, and comes to the running and ſhallow

ſhallow waters to ſpawn. Theſe, when ſalt can be procured, are pickled juſt as the froſt ſets in, and prove very good food with potatoes, which they have of late cultivated with ſucceſs. The natives live chiefly on this fiſh, which they hang up by the tails, and preſerve throughout the winter, or at leaſt as long as they laſt; for whatever quantity they may have taken, it is never known that their œconomy is ſuch as to make them laſt through the winter; which renders their ſituation very diſtreſſing; for if they had activity ſufficient to purſue the labours of the chaſe, the woods are become ſo barren of game as to afford them no great proſpect of relief. In the ſpring of the year they and the other inhabitants, make a quantity of ſugar from the maple tree, which they exchange with the traders for neceſſary articles, or carry it to Michilimakinac, where they expect a better price. One of theſe traders was agent for the North-Weſt Company, receiving, ſtoring and forwarding ſuch articles as come by the way of the lakes upon their veſſel: for it is to be obſerved, that a quantity of their goods are ſent by that route from Montreal in boats to Kingſton, at the entrance of Lake Ontario, and from thence in veſſels to Niagara, then over land ten miles to a water communication, by boats, to Lake Erie, where they are again received into veſſels, and carried over that lake up the river Detroit, through the lake and river Sinclair to Lake Huron

and

and from thence to the Falls of St. Mary's, when they are again landed and carried for a mile above the falls, and ſhipped over Lake Superior to the Grande Portage. This is found to be a leſs expenſive method than by canoes, but attended with more riſk, and requiring more time, than one ſhort ſeaſon of this country will admit; for the goods are always ſent from Montreal the preceding fall; and beſides, the company get their proviſions from Detroit, as flour and Indian corn; as alſo conſiderable ſupplies from Michilimakinac of maple ſugar, tallow, gum, &c. &c.

For the purpoſe of conveying all theſe things, they have two veſſels upon the Lakes Erie and Huron, and one on Lake Superior, of from fifty to ſeventy tons burthen. This being, therefore, the depot for tranſports, the Montreal canoes, on their arrival, were forwarded over Lake Superior, with only five men in each; the others were ſent to Michilimakinac for additional canoes, which were required to proſecute the trade, and then take a lading there, or at St. Mary's, and follow the others. At length they all arrive at the Grande Portage, which is one hundred and ſixty leagues from St. Mary's coaſt ways, and ſituated on a pleaſant bay on the North ſide of the lake, in latitude 48. North and longitude 90. Weſt from Greenwich, where the compaſs has not above five degrees Eaſt variation.

At

At the entrance of the bay is an iſland which ſcreens the harbour from every wind except the South. The ſhallowneſs of the water, however, renders it neceſſary for the veſſel to anchor near a mile from the ſhore, where there is not more than fourteen feet water. This lake juſtifies the name that has been given to it: the Falls of St. Mary, which is its Northern extremity, being in latitude 46. 31. North, and in longitude 84 Weſt, where there is no variation of the compaſs whatever, while its Southern extremity, at the River St. Louis, is in latitude 46. 45, North, and longitude 92. 10. Weſt: its greateſt breadth is one hundred and twenty miles, and its circumference, including its various bays, is not leſs than one thouſand two hundred miles. Along its North ſhore is the ſafeſt navigation, as it is a continued mountainous embankment of rock, from three hundred to one thouſand five hundred feet in height. There are numerous coves and ſandy bays to land, which are frequently ſheltered by iſlands from the ſwell of the lake. This is particularly the caſe at the diſtance of one hundred miles to the Eaſtward of the Grande Portage, and is called the Pays Plat.

This ſeems to have been cauſed by ſome convulſion of nature, for many of the iſlands diſplay a compoſition of lava, intermixed with round ſtones of the ſize of a pigeon's egg. The ſurrounding

rock

rock is generally hard, and of a dark blue grey, though it frequently has the appearance of iron and copper. The South ſide of the lake, from Point Shagoimigo Eaſt, is almoſt a continual ſtraight line of ſandy beach, interſperſed with rocky precipices of lime-ſtones, ſometimes riſing to an hundred feet in height, without a bay. The embankments from that point Weſtward are, in general, of ſtrong clay, mixed with ſtones, which renders the navigation irkſome and dangerous. On the ſame ſide, at the River Tonnagan, is found a quantity of virgin copper. The Americans, ſoon after they got poſſeſſion of that country, ſent an engineer thither; and I ſhould not be ſurpriſed to hear of their employing people to work the mine. Indeed, it might be well worthy the attention of the Britiſh ſubjects to work the mines on the North coaſt, though they are not ſuppoſed to be ſo rich as thoſe on the South.

Lake Superior is the largeſt and moſt magnificent body of freſh water in the world: it is clear and pellucid, of great depth, and abounding in a great variety of fiſh, which are the moſt excellent of their kind. There are trouts of three kinds, weighing from five to fifty pounds, ſturgeon, pickerel, pike, red and white carp, black baſs, herrings, &c. &c. and the laſt and beſt of all, the Ticamang, or white fiſh, which weighs from four

to sixteen pounds, and is of a superior quality in these waters.

This Lake may be denominated the grand reservoir of the River St. Laurence, as no considerable rivers discharge themselves into it. The principal ones are, the St. Louis, the Nipigon, the Pic, and the Michipicoten. Indeed, the extent of country from which any of them flow, or take their course, in any direction, cannot admit of it, in consequence of the ridge of land that separates them from the rivers that empty themselves into Hudson's-Bay, the gulph of Mexico, and the waters that fall in Lake Michegan, which afterwards become a part of the St. Laurence.

This vast collection of waters is often covered with fog, particularly, when the wind is from the East, which, driving against the high barren rocks on the North and West shore, dissolves in torrents of rain. It is very generally said, that the storms on this lake are denoted by a swell on the preceding day; but this circumstance did not appear from my observation to be a regular phenomenon, as the swells more frequently subsided without any subsequent wind.

Along the surrounding rocks of this immense lake, evident marks appear of the decrease of its water, by the lines observable along them. The space, however, between the highest and the lowest, is not so great as in the smaller lakes, as it does not

amount

amount to more than ſix feet, the former being very faint.

The inhabitants that are found along the coaſt of this water, are all of the Algonquin nation, the whole of which do not exceed 150 familes.*

Theſe people live chiefly on fiſh; indeed, from what has been ſaid of the country, it cannot be expected to abound in animals, as it is totally deſtitute of that ſhelter, which is ſo neceſſary to them. The rocks appear to have been over-run by fire, and the ſtinted timber, which once grew there, is frequently ſeen lying along the ſurface of them: but it is not eaſy to be reconciled, that any thing ſhould grow where there is ſo little appearance of ſoil. Between the fallen trees there are briars, with hurtleberry and gooſeberry buſhes, raſpberries, &c. which invite the bears in greater or leſſer numbers, as they are a favourite food of that animal: beyond theſe rocky banks are found a few mooſe and fallow deer. The waters alone are abundantly inhabited.

A very curious phenomenon was obſerved ſome

* In the year 1668, when the firſt miſſionaries viſited the South of this lake, they found the country full of inhabitants. They relate, that, about this time a band of the Nepiſingues, who were converted, emigrated to the Nipigon country, which is to the North of Lake Superior. Few of their deſcendants are now remaining, and not a trace of the religion communicated to them is to be diſcovered.

years

years ago at the Grand Portage, for which no obvious cause could be aſſigned. The water withdrew with great precipitation, leaving the ground dry that had never before been viſible, the fall being equal to four perpendicular feet, and ruſhing back with great velocity above the common mark. It continued thus falling and riſing for ſeveral hours, gradually decreaſing till it ſtopped at its uſual height. There is frequently an irregular influx and deflux, which does not exceed ten inches and is attributed to the wind.

The bottom of the bay, which forms an amphitheatre, is cleared of wood, and incloſed; and on the left corner of it, beneath an [illegible], three or four hundred feet in height, and crowned by others of a ſtill greater altitude, is the fort, picketed in with cedar palliſadoes, and incloſing houſes built with wood and covered with ſhingles. They are calculated for every convenience of trade, as well as to accommodate the proprietors and clerks during their ſhort reſidence there. The North men live under tents: but the more frugal pork-eater lodges beneath his canoe. The ſoil immediately bordering on the lake has not proved very propitious, as nothing but potatoes have been found to anſwer the trouble of cultivation. This circumſtance is probably owing to the cold damp fogs of the lake, and the moiſture of the ground from the ſprings that iſſue from beneath the hills. There

are

are meadows in the vicinity that yield abundance of hay for the cattle; but, as to agriculture, it has not hitherto been an object of ſerious conſideration.

I ſhall now leave theſe geographical notices, to give ſome further account of the people from Montreal.—When they are arrived at the Grande Portage, which is near nine miles over, each of them has to carry eight packages of ſuch goods and proviſions as are neceſſary for the interior country. This is a labour which cattle cannot conveniently perform in ſummer, as both horſes and oxen were tried by the company without ſucceſs. They are only uſeful for light, bulky articles; or for tranſporting upon ſledges, during the winter, whatever goods may remain there, eſpecially proviſion, of which it is uſual to have a year's ſtock on hand.

Having finiſhed this toilſome part of their duty, if more goods are neceſſary to be tranſported, they are allowed a Spaniſh dollar for each package: and ſo inured are they to this kind of labour, that I have known ſome of them ſet off with two packages of ninety pounds each, and return with two others of the ſame weight, in the courſe of ſix hours, being a diſtance of eighteen miles over hills and mountains. This neceſſary part of the buſineſs being over, if the ſeaſon be early they have ſome reſpite, but this depends upon the time the North men begin to arrive from their winter quarters, which

which they commonly do early in July. At that period, it is neceſſary to ſelect from the pork-eaters, a number of men, among whom are the recruits, or winterers, ſufficient to man the North canoes neceſſary to carry to the river of the rainy lake the goods and proviſion requiſite for the Athabaſca country; as the people of that country, (owing to the ſhortneſs of the ſeaſon and length of the road, can come no further), are equipped there and exchange ladings with the people of whom we are ſpeaking, and both return from whence they came. This voyage is performed in the courſe of a month, and they are allowed proportionable wages for their ſervices.

The north men being arrived at the Grande Portage, are regaled with bread, pork, butter, liquor, and tobacco, and ſuch as have not entered into agreements during the winter, which is cuſtomary, are contracted with, to return and perform the voyage for one, two, or three years: their accounts are alſo ſettled, and ſuch as chooſe to ſend any of their earnings to Canada, receive drafts to tranſmit to their relations or friends: and as ſoon as they can be got ready, which requires no more than a fortnight, they are again diſpatched to their reſpective departments. It is indeed, very creditable to them as ſervants, that though they are ſometimes aſſembled to the number of twelve hundred men, indulging themſelves in the free uſe of liquor, and quar-

relling

relling with each other, they always ſhow greateſt reſpect to their employers, who are comparatively but few in number, and beyond the aid of any legal power to enforce due obedience. In ſhort, a degree of ſubordination can only be maintained by the good opinion theſe men entertain of their employers, which has been uniformly the caſe, ſince the trade has been formed and conducted on a regular ſyſtem.

The people being diſpatched to their reſpective winter quarters, the agents from Montreal, aſſiſted by their clerks, prepare to return there, by getting the furs acroſs the Portage, and re-maſting them to Montreal, where they commonly arrive in the month of September.

The mode of living at the Grande Portage, is as follows: the proprietors, clerks, guides, and interpreters meſs together, to the number of ſometimes an hundred, at ſeveral tables, in one large hall, the proviſion conſiſting of bread, ſalt pork, beef, hams, fiſh, and veniſon, butter, peas, Indian corn, potatoes, tea, ſpirits, wine, &c. and plenty of milk, for which purpoſe ſeveral milch cows are conſtantly kept. The mechanics have rations of ſuch proviſion, but the canoe-men, both from the North and Montreal, have no other allowance here, or on the voyage, than Indian corn and melted fat. The corn for this purpoſe is prepared before it leaves Detroit, by boiling it in a ſtrong al-

kali,

kali, which takes off the outer husk; it is then well washed, and carefully dried upon stages, when it is fit for use. One quart of this is boiled for two hours, over a moderate fire, in a gallon of water; to which, when it has boiled a small time, are added two ounces of melted suet; this causes the corn to split, and in the time mentioned makes a pretty thick pudding. If to this is added a little salt, (but not before it is boiled, as it would interrupt the operation), it makes an wholesome, palatable food, and easy of digestion. This quantity is fully sufficient for a man's subsistence during twenty-four hours; though it is not sufficiently heartening to sustain the strength necessary for a state of active labour. The Americans call this dish Hominee *.

The trade from the Grande Portage, is, in some particulars, carried on in a different manner with that from Montreal. The canoes used in the latter transport are now too large for the former, and some of about half the size are procured from the natives, and are navigated by four, five, or six men, according to the distance which they have to go. They carry a lading of about thirty-five packages, on an average; of these twenty-three are for

* Corn is the cheapest provision that can be procured, though from the expence of transport, the bushel cost about twenty shillings sterling, at the Grande Portage. A man's daily allowance does not exceed ten-pence.

the

the purpoſe of trade, and the reſt are employed for proviſions, ſtores, and baggage. In each of theſe canoes are a foreman and ſteerſman; the one to be always on the look out, and direct the paſſage of the veſſel, and the other to attend the helm. They alſo carry her, whenever that office is neceſſary. The foreman has the command, and the middle-men obey both; the latter earn only two-thirds of the wages which are paid the two former. Independent of theſe a conductor or pilot is appointed to every four or ſix of theſe canoes, whom they are all obliged to obey; and is, or at leaſt is intended to be, a perſon of ſuperior experience, for which he is proportionably paid.

In theſe canoes, thus loaded, they embark at the North ſide of the portage, on the river Au Tourt, which is very inconſiderable; and after about two miles of a Weſterly courſe, is obſtructed by the Partridge Portage, ſix hundred paces long. In the ſpring this makes a conſiderable fall, when the water is high, over a perpendicular rock of one hundred and twenty feet. From thence the river continues to be ſhallow, and requires great care to prevent the bottom of the canoe from being injured by ſharp rocks, for a diſtance of three miles and an half to the Prairie, or Meadow, when half the lading is taken out, and carried by part of the crew, while two of them are conducting the canoe among the rocks, with the remainder, to the Carreboeuf

Portage, three miles and an half more, when they unload and come back two miles, and embark what was left for the other hands to carry, which they alſo land with the former; all of which is carried ſix hundred and eighty paces, and the canoe led up againſt the rapid. From hence the water is better calculated to carry canoes, and leads by a winding courſe to the North of Weſt three miles to the Outard Portage, over which the canoe, and every thing in her, is carried for two thouſand four hundred paces. At the further end is a very high hill to deſcend, over which hangs a rock upwards of ſeven hundred feet high. Then ſucceeds the Outard Lake, about ſix miles long, lying in a North-Weſt courſe, and about two miles wide in the broadeſt part. After paſſing a very ſmall rivulet, they come to the Elk Portage, over which the canoe and lading are again carried one thouſand one hundred and twenty paces; when they enter the lake of the ſame name, which is an handſome piece of water, running North-Weſt about four miles, and not more than one mile and an half wide *. They then land at the Portage de Ceriſe, over which, and in the face of a conſiderable hill, the canoe and cargo are again tranſported for one thouſand and fifty paces. This is only ſeparated from the ſecond Portage de Ceriſe, by a mud-pond

* Here is a moſt excellent fiſhery for white fiſh, which are exquiſite.

(where there is plenty of water lilies), of a quarter of a mile in length; and this is again ſeparated by a ſimilar pond, from the laſt Portage de Ceriſe, which is four hundred and ten paces. Here the ſame operation is to be performed for three hundred and eighty paces. They next enter on the Mountain Lake, running North-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles long, and about two miles in its greateſt breadth. In the centre of this lake, and to the right is the Old Road, by which I never paſſed; but an adequate notion may be formed of it from the road I am going to deſcribe, and which is univerſally preferred. This is firſt, the ſmall new portage over which every thing is carried for ſix hundred and twenty ſix paces, over hills and gullies; the whole is then embarked on a narrow line of water, that meanders South-Weſt about two miles and an half. It is neceſſary to unload here, for the length of the canoe, and then proceed Weſt half a mile, to the new Grande Portage, which is three thouſand one hundred paces in length, and over very rough ground, which requires the utmoſt exertions of the men, and frequently lames them: from hence they approach the Roſe Lake, the portage of that name being oppoſite to the junction of the road from the Mountain Lake. They then embark on the Roſe Lake, about one mile from the Eaſt end of it, and ſteer Weſt by South, in an oblique courſe, acroſs it two miles; then Weſt-North-Weſt

North-Weſt paſſing the Petite Pêche to the Marten Portage three miles. In this part of the lake the bottom is mud and ſlime, with about three or four feet of water over it; and here I frequently ſtruck a canoe pole of twelve feet long, without meeting any other obſtruction than if the whole were water: it has, however, a peculiar ſuction or attractive power, ſo that it is difficult to paddle a canoe over it. There is a ſmall ſpace along the South ſhore, where the water is deep, and this effect is not felt. In proportion to the diſtance from this part, the ſuction becomes more powerful: I have, indeed been told that loaded canoes have been in danger of being ſwallowed up, and have only owed their preſervation to other canoes, which were lighter. I have, myſelf, found it very difficult to get away from this attractive power, with ſix men, and great exertion, though we did not appear to be in any danger of ſinking.

Over againſt this is a very high, rocky ridge, on the South ſide, called Marten Portage, which is but twenty paces long, and ſeparated from the Pêche Portage, which is four hundred and eighty paces, by a mud-pond, covered with white lilies. From hence the courſe is on the lake of the ſame name, Weſt-South-Weſt three miles to the height of land, where the waters of the Dove or Pigeon River terminate, and which is one of the ſources of the great St. Laurence in this direction. Having

carried

carried the canoe and lading over it, ſix hundred and ſeventy-nine paces, they embark on the lake of Hauteur de Terre *, which is in the ſhape of an horſe-ſhoe. It is entered near the curve, and left at the extremity of the Weſtern limb, through a very ſhallow channel, where the canoe paſſes half loaded for thirty paces with the current, which conducts theſe waters through the ſucceeding lakes and rivers, till they diſcharge themſelves, by the river Nelſon, into Hudſon's-Bay. The firſt of theſe is Lac de pierres à fuſil, running Weſt-South-Weſt ſeven miles long, and two wide, and, making an angle at North-Weſt one mile more, becomes a river for half a mile, tumbling over a rock, and forming a fall and portage, called the Eſcalier, of fifty-five paces; but from hence it is neither lake or river, but poſſeſſes the character of both, and runs between large rocks, which cauſe a current or rapid, for about two miles and an half, Weſt-North-Weſt, to the portage of the Cheval du Bois. Here the canoe and contents are carried three hundred and eighty paces, between rocks; and within a quarter of a mile is the Portage des Gros Pins, which is ſix hundred and forty paces over an high ridge.

* The route which we have been travelling hitherto, leads along the high rocky land or bank of Lake Superior on the left. The face of the country offers a wild ſcene of huge hills and rocks, ſeparated by ſtony vallies, lakes, and ponds. Wherever there is the leaſt ſoil, it is well covered with trees.

ridge. The oppoſite ſide of it is waſhed by a ſmall lake three miles round; and the courſe is through the Eaſt end or ſide of it, three quarters of a mile North-Eaſt, where there is a rapid. An irregular, meandering channel, between rocky banks, then ſucceeds, for ſeven miles and an half, to the Maraboeuf Lake, which extends North four miles, and is three quarters of a mile wide, terminating by a rapid and décharge, of one hundred and eighty paces, the rock of Saginaga being in ſight, which cauſes a fall of about ſeven feet, and a portage of fifty-five paces.

Lake Saginaga takes its names from its numerous Iſlands. Its greateſt length from Eaſt to Weſt is about fourteen miles, with very irregular inlets, is no where more than three miles wide, and terminates at the ſmall portage of Le Rocher, of forty-three paces. From thence is a rocky, ſtony paſſage of one mile, to Prairie Portage, which is very improperly named, as there is no ground about it that anſwers to that deſcription, except a ſmall ſpot at the embarking place at the Weſt end: to the Eaſt is an entire bog; and it is with great difficulty that the lading can be landed upon ſtages, formed by driving piles into the mud, and ſpreading branches of trees over them. The portage riſes on a ſtony ridge, over which the canoe and cargo muſt be carried for ſix hundred and eleven paces. This is ſucceeded by an embarkation

tion on a ſmall bay, where the bottom is the ſame as has been deſcribed in the Weſt end of Roſe Lake, and it is with great difficulty that a laden canoe is worked over it, but it does not comprehend more than a diſtance of two hundred yards. From hence the progreſs continues through irregular channels, bounded by rocks, in a Weſterly courſe for about five miles, to the little Portage des Couteaux, of one hundred and ſixty-five paces, and the Lac des Couteaux, running about South-Weſt by Weſt twelve miles, and from a quarter to two miles wide. A deep bay runs Eaſt three miles from the Weſt end, where it is diſcharged by a rapid river, and after running two miles Weſt, it again becomes ſtill water. In this river are two carrying-places, the one fifteen, and the other one hundred and ninety paces. From this to the Portage des Carpes is one mile North-Weſt, leaving a narrow lake on the Eaſt that runs parallel with the Lake des Couteaux, half its length, where there is a carrying-place, which is uſed when the water in the river laſt mentioned is too low. The Portage des Carpes is three hundred and ninety paces, from whence the water ſpreads irregularly between rocks, five miles North-Weſt and South-Eaſt to the portage of Lac Bois Blanc, which is one hundred and eighty paces. Then follows the lake of that name, but I think improperly ſo called,

as

as the natives name it the Lake Paſſeau Minac Sagaigan, or lake of Dry Berries.

Before the ſmall pox ravaged this country, and completed, what the Nodowaſis, in their warfare, had gone far to accompliſh, the deſtruction of its inhabitants, the population was very numerous: this was alſo a favourite part, where they made their canoes, &c. the lake abounding in fiſh, the country round it being plentifully ſupplied with various kinds of game, and the rocky ridges, that form the boundaries of the water, covered with a variety of berries.

When the French were in poſſeſſion of this country, they had ſeveral trading eſtabliſhments on the iſlands and banks of this lake. Since that period, the few people remaining, who were of the Algonquin nation, could hardly find ſubſiſtence; game having become ſo ſcarce, that they depended principally for food upon fiſh, and wild rice which grows ſpontaneouſly in theſe parts.

This lake is irregular in its form, and its utmoſt extent from Eaſt to Weſt is fifteen miles; a point of land, called Point au Pin, jutting into it, divides it in two parts: it then makes a ſecond angle at the Weſt end, to the leſſer Portage de Bois Blanc, two hundred paces in length. This channel is not wide, and is intercepted by ſeveral rapids in the courſe of a mile: it runs Weſt-North-Weſt to the Portage des Pins, over which the canoe and lading

lading is again carried four hundred paces. From hence the channel is alſo intercepted by very dangerous rapids for two miles Weſterly, to the point of Pointe du Bois, which is two hundred and eighty paces. Then ſucceeds the Portage of Lake Croche one mile more, where the carrying-place is eighty paces, and is followed by an embarkation on that lake, which takes its name from its figure. It extends eighteen miles, in a meandering form, and in a weſterly direction; it is in general very narrow, and at about two-thirds of its length becomes very contracted, with a ſtrong current.

Within three miles of the laſt Portage is a remarkable rock, with a ſmooth face, but ſplit and cracked in different parts; which hang over the water. Into one of its horizontal chaſms a great number of arrows have been ſhot, which is ſaid to have been done by a war party of the Nadowaſis or Sieux, who had done much miſchief in this country, and left theſe weapons as a warning to the Chebois or natives, that, notwithſtanding its lakes, rivers, and rocks, it was not inacceſſible to their enemies.

Lake Croche is terminated by the Portage de Rideau, four hundred paces long, and derives its name from the appearance of the water, falling over a rock of upwards of thirty feet. Several rapids ſucceed, with intervals of ſtill water, for about three miles to the Flacon portage, which is very

difficult, is four hundred paces long, and leads to the Lake of La Croix, ſo named from its ſhape. It runs about North-Weſt eighteen miles to the Beaver Dam, and then ſinks into a deep bay nearly Eaſt. The courſe to the Portage is Weſt by North for ſixteen miles more from the Beaver Dam, and into the Eaſt bay is a road which was frequented by the French, and followed through lakes and rivers until they came to Lake Superior by the river Caminiſtquia, thirty miles Eaſt of the grand Portage.

Portage la Croix is ſix hundred paces long: to the next portage is a quarter of a mile, and its length is forty paces; the river winding four miles to Vermillion Lake, which runs ſix or ſeven miles North-North-Weſt, and by a narrow ſtrait communicates with Lake Namaycan, which takes its name from a particular place at the foot of a fall, where the natives ſpear ſturgeon: Its courſe is about North-North-Weſt and South-South-Eaſt, with a bay running Eaſt, that gives it the form of a triangle: its length is about ſixteen miles to the Nouvelle Portage. The diſcharge of the lake is from a bay on the left, and the portage one hundred and eighty paces, to which ſucceeds a very ſmall river, from whence there is but a ſhort diſtance to the next Nouvelle Portage, three huntdred and twenty paces long. It is then neceſſary to embark on a ſwamp, or overflowed country,

where wild rice grows in great abundance. There is a channel or ſmall river in the centre of this ſwamp, which is kept with difficulty, and runs South and North one mile and a half. With deepening water, the courſe continues North-North-Weſt one mile to the Chaudiere Portage, which is cauſed by the diſcharge of the waters running on the left of the road from Lake Namaycan, which uſed to be the common route, but that which I have deſcribed is the ſafeſt as well as ſhorteſt. From thence there is ſome current though the water is wide ſpread, and its courſe about North by Weſt three miles and an half to the Lac de la Pluie, which lies nearly Eaſt and Weſt; from thence about fifteen miles is a narrow ſtrait that divides the lake into two unequal parts, from whence to its diſcharge is a diſtance of twenty-four miles. There is a deep bay running North-Weſt on the right, that is not included, and is remarkable for furniſhing the natives with a kind of ſoft, red ſtone, of which they make their pipes; it alſo affords an excellent fiſhery both in the ſummer and winter; and from it is an eaſy, ſafe, and ſhort road to the Lake du Bois, (which I ſhall mention preſently) for the Indians to paſs in their ſmall canoes, through a ſmall lake and on a ſmall river whoſe banks furniſh abundance of wild rice. The diſcharge of this lake is called Lake de la Pluie River, at whoſe entrance there is a rapid, below which

which is a fine bay, where there had been an extensive picketted fort and building when possessed by the French: the site of it is at present a beautiful meadow, surrounded with groves of oaks. From hence there is a strong current for two miles, where the water falls over a rock twenty feet, and from the consequent turbulence of the water, the carrying-place, which is three hundred and twenty paces long, derives the name of Chaudiere. Two miles onward is the present trading establishment, situated on an high bank on the North side of the river, in 48. 37. North latitude.

Here the people from Montreal come to meet those who arrive from the Athabasca country, as has been already described, and exchange lading with them. This is also the residence of the first, chief, or Sachem, of all the Algonquin tribes, inhabiting the different parts of this country. He is by distinction called Nectam, which implies personal pre-eminence. Here also the elders meet in council to treat of peace or war.

This is one of the finest rivers in the North-West, and runs a course West and East one hundred and twenty computed miles; but in taking its course and distance minutely I make it only eighty. Its banks are covered with a rich soil, particularly to the North, which in many parts, are clothed with fine open groves of oak, with the maple, the pine, and the cedar. The Southern bank, is not so eleva-

ted,

ted, and diſplays the maple, the white birch, and the cedar, with the ſpruce, the alder and various underwood. Its waters abound in fiſh, particularly the ſturgeon, which the natives both ſpear and take with drag-nets. But notwithſtanding the promiſe of this ſoil, the Indians do not attend to its cultivation, though they are not ignorant of the common proceſs, and are fond of the Indian corn, when they can get it from us.

Though the ſoil at the fort is a ſtiff clay, there is a garden, which, unaſſiſted as it is by manure, or any particular attention, is tolerably productive.

We now proceed to mention the Lake du Bois, into which this river diſcharges itſelf in latitude 49. North, and was formerly famous for the richneſs of its banks and waters, which abounded with whatever was neceſſary to a ſavage life. The French had ſeveral ſettlements in and about it; but it might be almoſt concluded, that ſome fatal circumſtance had deſtroyed the game, as war and the ſmall pox had diminiſhed the inhabitants, it having been very unproductive in animals ſince the Britiſh ſubjects have been engaged in travelling through it; though it now appears to be recovering its priſtine ſtate. The few Indians who inhabit it might live very comfortably, if they were not ſo immoderately fond of ſpirituous liquors.

This lake is alſo rendered remarkable, in conſequence of the Americans having named it as the

ſpot

ſpot, from which a line of boundary, between them and Britiſh America, was to run Weſt, until it ſtruck the Miſſiſſippi; which, however, can never happen, as the North-Weſt part of the Lake du Bois is in latitude 49. 37. North, and longitude 94. 31. Weſt, and the Northernmoſt branch of the ſource of the Miſſiſſippi is in latitude 47. 38. North, and longitude 95. 6. Weſt, aſcertained by Mr. Thomſon, aſtronomer to the North-Weſt Company, who was ſent expreſsly for that purpoſe in the ſpring of 1798. He, in the ſame year, determined the Northern bend of the Miſſiſoury to be in latitude 47. 32. North, and longitude 101. 25. Weſt; and, according to the Indian accounts, it runs to the ſouth of Weſt, ſo that if the Miſſiſoury were even to be conſidered as the Miſſiſſippi, no Weſtern line could ſtrike it.

It does not appear to me to be clearly determined what courſe the Line is to take, or from what part of Lake Superior it ſtrikes through the country to the Lake du Bois: were it to follow the principal waters to their ſource, it ought to keep through Lake Superior to the River St. Louis, and follow that river to its ſource; cloſe to which is the ſource of the waters falling into the river of Lake la Pluie, which is a common route of the Indians to the Lake du Bois: the St. Louis paſſes within a ſhort diſtance of a branch of the Miſſiſſippi, where it becomes navigable for canoes. This will appear

more

more evident from conſulting the map; and if the navigation of the Miſſiſſippi is conſidered as of any conſequence, by this country, from that part of the globe, ſuch is the neareſt way to get at it.

But to return to our narrative. The Lake du Bois is, as far as I could learn, nearly round, and the canoe courſe through the centre of it among a cluſter of iſlands, ſome of which are ſo extenſive that they may be taken for the main land. The reduced courſe would be nearly South and North. But following the navigating courſe, I make the diſtance ſeventy-five miles, though in a direct line it would fall very ſhort of that length. At about two-thirds of it there is a ſmall carrying-place, when the water is low. The carrying-place out of the lake is on an iſland, and named Portage du Rat, in latitude 49. 37. North, and longitude 94$\frac{1}{4}$. Weſt, it is about fifty paces long. The lake diſcharges itſelf at both ends of this iſland, and forms, the River Winipic, which is a large body of water, interſperſed with numerous iſlands, cauſing various channels and interruptions of portages and rapids. In ſome parts it has the appearance of lakes, with ſteady currents; I eſtimate its winding courſe to the Dalles eight miles; to the Grand Décharge twenty-five miles and an half, which is a long carrying-place for the goods; from thence to the little Décharge one mile and an half; to the Terre Jaûne Portage two miles and an half; then to its galet ſeventy

venty yards; two miles and three quarters to the Terre Blanche, near which is a fall of from four to five feet; three miles and an half to Portage de L'Iſle, where there is a trading-poſt, and, about eleven miles, on the North ſhore, a trading eſtabliſhment, which is the road, in boats, to Albany River, and from thence to Hudſon's Bay. There is alſo a communication with Lake Superior, through what is called the Nipigan country, which enters that Lake about thirty-five leagues Eaſt of the Grande Portage. In ſhort, the country is ſo broken by lakes and rivers, that people may find their way in canoes in any direction they pleaſe. It is now four miles to Portage de L'Iſle, which is but ſhort, though ſeveral canoes have been loſt in attempting to run the rapid. From thence it is twenty-ſix miles to Jacob's Falls, which are about fifteen feet high; and ſix miles and an half to the woody point; forty yards from which is another Portage. They both form an high fall, but not perpendicular. From thence to another galet, or rocky Portage, is about two miles; which is one continual rapid and caſcade; and about two miles further is the Chute à l'Eſclave, which is upwards of thirty feet. The Portage is long, through a point covered with wood: it is ſix miles and an half more to the barrier, and ten miles to the Grand Rapid. From thence, on the North ſide, is a ſafe road, when the waters are high, through ſmall

rivers

rivers and lakes, to the Lake du Bonnet, called the Pinnawas, from the man who discovered it: to the White River, ſo called from its being, for a conſiderable length, a ſucceſſion of falls and cataracts, in twelve miles. Here are ſeven portages, in ſo ſhort a ſpace, that the whole of them are diſcernible at the ſame moment. From this to Lake du Bonnet is fifteen miles more, and four miles acroſs it to the rapid. Here the Pinnawas road joins, and from thence it is two miles to the Galet du Lac du Bonnet; from this to the Galet du Bonnet one mile and an half; thence to the Portage of the ſame name is three miles. This Portage is near half a league in length, and derives its name from a cuſtom the Indians have of crowning ſtones, laid in a circle, on the higheſt rock in the portage, with wreaths of herbage and branches. There have been examples of men taking ſeven packages of ninety pounds each, at one end of the portage, and putting them down at the other without ſtopping.

To this, another ſmall portage immediately ſucceeds, over a rock producing a fall. From thence to the fall of Terre Blanche is two miles and an half; to the firſt portage Des Eaux qui remuent is three miles; to the next, of the ſame name, is but a few yards diſtant; to the third and laſt, which is a Décharge, is three miles and an half; and from this to the laſt Portage of the river one mile and an half; and to the eſtabliſhment, or proviſion houſe,

is two miles and an half. Here alſo the French had their principal inland depôt, and got their canoes made.

It is here, that the preſent traders, going to great diſtances, and where proviſion is difficult to procure, receive a ſupply to carry them to the Rainy Lake, or Lake Superior. From the eſtabliſhment to the entrance of Lake Winipic is four miles and an half, latitude 50. 37. North.

The country, ſoil, produce, and climate, from Lake Superior to this place bear a general reſemblance, with a predominance of rock and water: the former is of the granite kind. Where there is any ſoil it is well covered with wood, ſuch as oak, elm, aſh of different kinds, maple of two kinds, pines of various deſcriptions, among which are what I call the cypreſs, with the hickory, iron-wood, liard, poplar, cedar, black and white birch, &c. &c. Vaſt quantities of wild rice are ſeen throughout the country, which the natives collect in the month of Auguſt for their winter ſtores.* To the North of fifty degrees, it is hardly known, or at leaſt does not come to maturity.

Lake Winipic is the great reſervoir of ſeveral large rivers, and diſcharges itſelf by the River Nelſon into Hudſon's Bay. The firſt in rotation,

* The fruits are, ſtrawberries, hurtleberries, plumbs, and cherries, hazlenuts, gooſeberries, currants, raſpberries, poires, &c.

next

next to that I have juſt deſcribed, is the Aſſiniboin, or Red River, which, at the diſtance of forty miles coaſtwiſe, diſembogues on the South-Weſt ſide of the lake Winipic. It alternately receives thoſe two denominations from its dividing, at the diſtance of about thirty miles from the lake, into two large branches. The Eaſtern branch, called the Red River, runs in a Southern direction to near the head waters of the Miſſiſſippi. On this are two trading eſtabliſhments. The country on either ſide is but partially ſupplied with wood, and conſiſts of plains covered with herds of the buffalo and the elk, eſpecially on the Weſtern ſide. On the Eaſtern ſide are lakes and rivers, and the whole country is well-wooded, level, abounding in beaver, bears, mooſe-deer, fallow-deer, &c. &c. The natives, who are of the Algonquin tribe, are not very numerous, and are conſidered as the natives of Lake Superior. This country being near the Miſſiſſippi, is alſo inhabited by the Nadowaſis, who are the natural enemies of the former; the head of the water being the war-line, they are in a continual ſtate of hoſtility; and though the Algonquins are equally brave, the others generally out-number them; it is very probable, therefore, that if the latter continue to venture out of the woods, which form their only protection, they will ſoon be extirpated. There is not, perhaps, a finer country in the world for the reſidence of unciviliſed man, than that which occu-

pies the ſpace between this river and Lake Superior. It abounds in every thing neceſſary to the wants and comforts of ſuch a people. Fiſh, veniſon, and fowl, with wild rice, are in great plenty; while at the ſame time, their ſubſiſtence requires that bodily exerciſe ſo neceſſary to health and vigour.

This great extent of country was formerly very populous, but from the information I received, the aggregate of its inhabitants does not exceed three hundred warriors; and, among the few whom I ſaw, it appeared to me that the widows were more numerous than the men. The rackoon is a native of this country, but is ſeldom found to the Northward of it.

The other branch is called after the tribe of the Nadawaſis, who here go by the name of Aſſiniboins, and are the principal inhabitants of it. It runs from the North-North-Weſt, and, in the latitude of 51¼. Weſt, and longitude 103⅓. riſing in the ſame mountains as the river Dauphin, of which I ſhall ſpeak in due order. They muſt have ſeparated from their nation at a time beyond our knowledge, and live in peace with the Algonquins and Kniſteneaux.

The country between this and the Red River, is almoſt a continual plain to the Miſſiſoury. The ſoil is ſand and gravel, with a ſlight intermixture of earth, and produces a ſhort graſs. Trees are very rare; nor are there on the banks of the river

ſufficient,

ſufficient, except in particular ſpots, to build houſes and ſupply fire-wood for the trading eſtabliſhments, of which there are four principal ones. Both theſe rivers are navigable for canoes to their ſource, without a fall; though in ſome parts there are rapids, cauſed by occaſional beds of lime-ſtone, and gravel; but in general they have a ſandy bottom.

The Aſſiniboins, and ſome of the Fall, or Big-bellied Indians, are the principal inhabitants of this country, and border on the river, occupying the centre part of it; that next Lake Winipic, and about its ſource, being the ſtation of the Algonquins and Kniſteneaux, who have choſen it in preference to their own country. They do not exceed five hundred families. They are not beaver hunters, which accounts for their allowing the diviſion juſt mentioned, as the lower and upper parts of this river have thoſe animals, which are not found in the intermediate diſtrict. They confine themſelves to hunting the buffalo, and trapping wolves, which cover the country. What they do not want of the former for raiment and food, they ſometimes make into pemmican, or pounded meat, while they melt the fat, and prepare the ſkins in their hair, for winter. The wolves they never eat, but produce a tallow from their fat, and prepare their ſkins; all which they bring to exchange for arms and ammunition, rum, tobacco, knives, and various baubles, with thoſe who go to traffic in their country.

The

The Algonquins, and the Knifteneaux, on the contrary, attend to the fur-hunting, fo that they acquire the additional articles of cloth, blankets, &c. but their paffion for rum often puts it out of their power to fupply themfelves with real neceffaries.

The next river of magnitude is the river Dauphin, which empties itfelf at the head of St. Martin's Bay, on the Weft fide of the Lake Winipic, latitude nearly 52. 15. North, taking its fource in the fame mountains as the laft-mentioned river, as well as the Swan and Red-Deer River, the latter paffing through the lake of the fame name, as well as the former, and both continuing their courfe through the Manitoba Lake, which, from thence, runs parallel with Lake Winipic, to within nine miles of the Red River, and by what is called the river Dauphin, difembogues its waters, as already defcribed, into that Lake. Thefe rivers are very rapid, and interrupted by falls, &c. the bed being generally rocky. All this country, to the South branch of the Safkatchiwine, abounds in beaver, moofe-deer, fallow-deer, elks, bears, buffalos, &c. The foil is good, and wherever any attempts have been made to raife the efculent plants, &c. it has been found productive.

On thefe waters are three principal forts for trade. Fort Dauphin, which was eftablifhed by the French before the conqueft. Red-Deer River, and Swan-

River

River Forts, with occasional detached posts from these. The inhabitants are the Knisteneaux, from the North of Lake Winipic; and Algonquins from the country between the Red River and Lake Superior; and some from the Rainy Lake: but as they are not fixed inhabitants, their number cannot be determined: they do not, however, at any time exceed two hundred warriors. In general they are good hunters. There is no other considerable river except the Saskatchiwine, which I shall mention presently, that empties itself into the Lake Winipic.

Those on the North side are inconsiderable, owing to the comparative vicinity of the high land that separates the waters coming this way, from those discharging into Hudson's bay. The course of the lake is about West-North-West, and South-South-East, and the East end of it is in 50. 37. North. It contracts at about a quarter of its length to a strait, in latitude 51, 45. and is no more than two miles broad, where the South shore is gained through islands, and crossing various bays to the discharge of the Saskatchiwine, in latitude 53. 15. This lake, in common with those of this country, is bounded on the North with banks of black and grey rock, and on the South by a low, level country, occasionally interrupted with a ridge or bank of lime-stones, lying in stratas, and rising to the perpendicular height of from twenty to forty feet;

feet; these are covered with a small quantity of earth, forming a level surface, which bears timber, but of a moderate growth, and declines to a swamp. Where the banks are low, it is evident in many places that the waters are withdrawn, and never rise to those heights which were formerly washed by them.

The inhabitants who are found along this lake, are of the Knisteneaux and Algonquin tribes, and but few in number, though game is not scarce, and there is fish in great abundance. The black bass is found there, and no further West; and beyond it no maple trees are seen, either hard or soft.

On entering the Saskatchiwine, in the course of a few miles, the great rapid interrupts the passage. It is about three miles long. Through the greatest part of it the canoe is towed, half or full laden, according to the state of the waters: the canoe and its contents are then carried one thousand one hundred paces. The channel here is near a mile wide, the waters tumbling over ridges of rocks that traverse the river. The south bank is very high, rising upwards of fifty feet, of the same rock as seen on the South side of the Lake Winipic, and the North is not more than a third of that height. There is an excellent sturgeon-fishery at the foot of this cascade, and vast numbers of pelicans, cormorants, &c. frequent it, where they watch to seize the fish that may be killed or disabled by the force of the waters.

About

About two miles from this Portage the navigation is again interrupted by the Portage of the Rocher Rouge, which is an hundred yards long; and a mile and half from thence the river is barred by a range of iſlands, forming rapids between them; and through theſe it is the ſame diſtance to the rapid of Lake Travers, which is four miles right acroſs, and eight miles in length. Then ſucceeds the Grande Décharge, and ſeveral rapids, for four miles to the Cedar Lake, which is entered through a ſmall channel on the left, formed by an iſland, as going round it would occaſion loſs of time. In this diſtance banks of rocks (ſuch as have already been deſcribed), appear at intervals on either ſide; the reſt of the country is low. This is the caſe along the South bank of the lake and the iſlands, while the North ſide, which is very uncommon, is level throughout. This lake runs firſt Weſt four miles, then as much more Weſt-South-Weſt, acroſs a deep bay on the right, then ſix miles to the Point de Lievre, and acroſs another bay again on the right; then North-Weſt eight miles, acroſs a ſtill deeper bay on the right; and ſeven miles parallel with the North coaſt, North-North-Weſt through iſlands, five miles more to Fort Bourbon *, ſituated on a ſmall iſland, dividing this from Mud-Lake.

* This was alſo a principal poſt of the French, who gave it its name.

The Cedar Lake is from four to twelve miles wide, exclusive of the bays. Its banks are covered with wood, and abound in game, and its waters produce plenty of fish, particularly the sturgeon. The Mud-Lake, and the neighbourhood of the Fort Bourbon, abound with geese, ducks, swans, &c. and was formerly remarkable for a vast number of martens, of which it cannot now boast but a very small proportion.

The Mud-Lake must have formerly been a part of the Cedar Lake, but the immense quantity of earth and sand, brought down by the Saskatchiwine, has filled up this part of it for a circumference whose diameter is at least fifteen or twenty miles: part of which space is still covered with a few feet of water, but the greatest proportion is shaded with large trees, such as the liard, the swamp-ash, and the willow. This land consists of many islands, which consequently form various channels, several of which are occasionally dry, and bearing young wood. It is, indeed, more than probable that this river will, in the course of time, convert the whole of the Cedar Lake into a forest. To the North-West the cedar is not to be found.

From this lake the Saskatchiwine may be considered as navigable to near its sources in the rocky mountains, for canoes, and without a carrying-place, making a great bend to Cumberland House, on Sturgeon Lake. From the confluence of its

North

North and South branches its courſe is Weſterly; ſpreading itſelf, it receives ſeveral tributary ſtreams, and encompaſſes a large track of country, which is level, particularly along the South branch, but is little known. Beaver, and other animals, whoſe furs are valuable, are amongſt the inhabitants of the North-Weſt branch, and the plains are covered with buffalos, wolves, and ſmall foxes; particularly about the South branch, which, however, has of late claimed ſome attention, as it is now underſtood, that where the plains terminate towards the rocky mountain, there is a ſpace of hilly country clothed with wood, and inhabited alſo by animals of the fur kind. This has been actually determined to be the caſe towards the head of the North branch, where the trade has been carried to about the latitude 54. North, and longitude 114½. Weſt. The bed and banks of the latter, in ſome few places, diſcover a ſtratum of free-ſtone; but, in general, they are compoſed of earth and ſand. The plains are ſand and gravel, covered with fine graſs, and mixed with a ſmall quantity of vegetable earth. This is particularly obſervable along the North branch, the Weſt ſide of which is covered with wood.

There are on this river five principal factories for the convenience of trade with the natives. Nepawi Houſe, South-branch Houſe, Fort-George Houſe, Fort-Auguſtus Houſe, and Upper Eſta-

blifhment. There have been many others, which, from various caufes, have been changed for thefe, while there are occafionally others depending on each of them.

The inhabitants, from the information I could obtain, are as follow:

At Nepawi, and South-Branch Houfe, about thirty tents of Knifteneaux, or ninety warriors; and fixty tents of Stone-Indians, or Affiniboins, who are their neighbours, and are equal to two hundred men: their hunting ground extends upwards to about the Eagle Hills. Next to them are thofe who trade at Forts George and Auguftus, and are about eighty tents or upwards of Knifteneaux: on either fide of the river, their number may be two hundred. In the fame country are one hundred and forty tents of Stone-Indians; not quite half of them inhabit the Weft woody country; the others never leave the plains, and their numbers cannot be lefs than four hundred and fifty men. At the Southern Head-waters of the North branch dwells a tribe called Sarfees, confifting of about thirty-five tents, or one hundred and twenty men. Oppofite to thofe Eaftward, on the head-waters of the South Branch, are the Picaneaux, to the number of from twelve to fifteen hundred men. Next to them, on the fame water, are the Blood-Indians, of the fame nation as the laft, to the number of about fifty tents, or two hundred and fifty men. From them downwards

downwards extend the Black-Feet Indians, of the ſame nation as the two laſt tribes: their number may be eight hundred men. Next to them, and who extend to the confluence of the South and North branch, are the Fall, or Big-bellied Indians, who may amount to about ſix hundred warriors.

Of all theſe different tribes, thoſe who inhabit the broken country on the North-Weſt ſide, and the ſource of the North branch, are beaver hunters; the others deal in proviſions, wolf, buffalo, and fox ſkins; and many people on the South branch do not trouble themſelves to come near the trading eſtabliſhments. Thoſe who do, chooſe ſuch eſtabliſhments as are next to their country. The Stone-Indians here, are the ſame people as the Stone-Indians, or Aſſiniboins, who inhabit the river of that name already deſcribed, and both are detached tribes from the Nadawaſis, who inhabit the Weſtern ſide of the Miſſiſſippi, and lower part of the Miſſiſoury. The Fall, or Big-bellied Indians, are from the South-Eaſtward alſo, and of a people who inhabit the plains from the North bend of the laſt mentioned river, latitude 47. 32. North, longitude 101. 25. Weſt, to the South bend of the Aſſiniboin River, to the number of ſeven hundred men. Some of them occaſionally come to the latter river to exchange dreſſed buffalo robes, and bad wolf-ſkins for articles of no great value.

The

The Picaneaux, Black-Feet, and Blood-Indians, are a diſtinct people, ſpeak a language of their own, and, I have reaſon to think, are travelling North-Weſtward, as well as the others juſt mentioned: nor have I heard of any Indians with whoſe language, that which they ſpeak has any affinity. They are the people who deal in horſes and take them upon the war-parties towards Mexico; from which, it is evident, that the country to the South-Eaſt of them, conſiſts of plains, as thoſe animals could not well be conducted through an hilly and woody country, interſected by waters.

The Sarſees, who are but few in number, appear from their language, to come on the contrary from the North-Weſtward, and are of the ſame people as the Rocky-Mountain Indians deſcribed in my ſecond journal, who are a tribe of the Chepewyans; and, as for the Kniſteneaux, there is no queſtion of their having been, and continuing to be, invaders of this country, from the Eaſtward. Formerly, they ſtruck terror into all the other tribes whom they met; but now they have loſt the reſpect that was paid them; as thoſe whom they formerly conſidered as barbarians, are now their allies, and conſequently become better acquainted with them, and have acquired the uſe of fire-arms. The former are ſtill proud without power, and affect to conſider the others as their inferiors: thoſe conſequently are extremely jealous of them, and, de-

pending

pending upon their own ſuperiority in numbers, will not ſubmit tamely to their inſults; ſo that the conſequences often prove fatal, and the Kniſteneaux are thereby decreaſing both in power and number: ſpirituous liquors alſo tend to their diminution, as they are inſtigated thereby to engage in quarrels which frequently have the moſt diſaſtrous termination among themſelves.

The Stone-Indians muſt not be conſidered in the ſame point of view reſpecting the Kniſteneaux, for they have been generally obliged, from various cauſes, to court their alliance. They, however, are not without their diſagreements, and it is ſometimes very difficult to compoſe their differences. Theſe quarrels occaſionally take place with the traders, and ſometimes have a tragical concluſion. They generally originate in conſequence of ſtealing women and horſes: they have great numbers of the latter throughout their plains, which are brought, as has been obſerved, from the Spaniſh ſettlements in Mexico; and many of them have been ſeen even in the back parts of this country, branded with the initials of their original owners names. Thoſe horſes are diſtinctly employed as beaſts of burden, and to chaſe the buffalo. The former are not conſidered as being of much value, as they may be purchaſed for a gun, which coſts no more than twenty-one ſhillings in Great Britain. Many of the hunters cannot be purchaſed with ten, the comparative value,

value of which exceeds the property of any native.

Of theſe uſeful animals no care whatever is taken, as when they are no longer employed, they are turned looſe winter and ſummer to provide for themſelves. Here, it is to be obſerved, that the country, in general, on the Weſt and North ſide of this great river, is broken by the lakes and rivers with ſmall intervening plains, where the ſoil is good, and the graſs grows to ſome length. To theſe the male buffalo's reſort for the winter, and if it be very ſevere, the females alſo are obliged to leave the plains.

But to return to the route by which the progreſs Weſt and North is made through this continent.

We leave the Saſkatchiwine * by entering the river which forms the diſcharge of the Sturgeon Lake, on whoſe Eaſt bank is ſituated Cumberland houſe, in latitude 53. 56. North, longitude 102. 15. The diſtance between the entrance and Cumberland houſe is eſtimated at twenty miles. It is very evident that the mud which is carried down by the Saſkatchiwine River, has formed the land that lies between it and the lake, for the diſtance

* It may be proper to obſerve, that the French had two ſettlements upon the Saſkatchiwine, long before, and at the conqueſt of Canada; the firſt at the Paſquia, near Carrot River, and the other at Nipawi, were they had agricultural inſtruments and wheel carriages, marks of both being found about thoſe eſtabliſhments, where the ſoil is excellent.

of

of upwards of twenty miles in the line of the river, which is inundated during one half of the ſummer, though covered with wood. This lake forms an irregular horſe-ſhoe, one ſide of which runs to the North-Weſt, and bears the name of Pine-Iſland Lake, and the other known by the name already mentioned, runs to the Eaſt of North, and is the largeſt: its length is about twenty-ſeven miles, and its greateſt breadth about ſix miles. The North ſide of the latter is the ſame kind of rock as that deſcribed in Lake Winipic, on the Weſt ſhore. In latitude 54. 16. North, the Sturgeon-Weir River diſcharges itſelf into this lake, and its bed appears to be of the ſame kind of rock, and is almoſt a continual rapid. Its direct courſe is about Weſt by North, and with its windings, is about thirty miles. It takes its waters into the Beaver Lake, the South-Weſt ſide of which conſiſts of the ſame rock lying in thin ſtratas: the route then proceeds from iſland to iſland for about twelve miles, and along the North ſhore, for four miles more, the whole being a North-Weſt courſe to the entrance of a river, in latitude 54. 32. North. The lake, for this diſtance, is about four or five miles wide, and abounds with fiſh common to the country. The part of it upon the right of that which has been deſcribed, appears more conſiderable. The iſlands are rocky, and the lake itſelf ſurrounded by rocks. The communication from

hence to the Bouleau Lake, alternately narrows into rivers and ſpreads into ſmall lakes. The interruptions are, the Pente Portage, which is ſucceeded by the Grand Rapid, where there is a Décharge, the Carp Portage, the Bouleau Portage in latitude 54. 50. North, including a diſtance, together with the windings, of thirty-four miles, in a Weſterly direction. The lake de Bouleau then follows. This lake might with greater propriety, be denominated a canal, as it is not more than a mile in breadth. Its courſe is rather to the Eaſt of North for twelve miles to Portage de l'Iſle. From thence there is ſtill water to Portage d'Epinettes, except an adjoining rapid. The diſtance is not more than four miles Weſterly. After croſſing this Portage, it is not more than two miles to Lake Miron, which is in latitude 55. 7. North. Its length is about twelve miles, and its breadth irregular, from two to ten miles. It is only ſeparated from Lake du Chitique, or Pelican Lake, by a ſhort, narrow, and ſmall ſtrait. That lake is not more than ſeven miles long, and its courſe about North-Weſt. The Lake des Bois then ſucceeds, the paſſage to which is through ſmall lakes, ſeparated by falls and rapids. The firſt is a Décharge: then follow the three gallets, in immediate ſucceſſion. From hence Lake des Bois runs about twenty one miles. Its courſe is South-South-Eaſt, and North-North-Weſt, and is full of iſlands. The

paſſage

paſſage continues through an intricate, narrow, winding, and ſhallow channel for eight miles. The interruptions in this diſtance are frequent, but depend much on the ſtate of the waters. Having paſſed them, it is neceſſary to croſs the Portage de Traite, or, as it is called by the Indians, Athiquiſipichigan Ouinigam, or the Portage of the Stretched Frog Skin, to the Miſſinipi. The waters already deſcribed diſcharge themſelves into Lake Winipic, and augment thoſe of the river Nelſon. Theſe which we are now entering are called the Miſſinipi, or great Churchill River.

All the country to the South eaſt of this, within the line of the progreſs that has been deſcribed, is interſperſed by lakes, hills, and rivers, and is full of animals, of the fur-kind, as well as the mooſe-deer. Its inhabitants are the Kniſteneaux Indians, who are called by the ſervants of the Hudſon's-Bay Company, at York, their home-guards.

The traders from Canada ſucceeded for ſeveral years in getting the largeſt proportion of their furs, till the year 1793, when the ſervants of that company thought proper to ſend people amongſt them, (and why they did not do it before is beſt known to themſelves), for the purpoſe of trade, and ſecuring their credits, which the Indians were apt to forget. From the ſhort diſtance they had to come, and the quantity of goods they ſupplied, the trade has, in a great meaſure, reverted to them,

as the merchants from Canada could not meet them upon equal terms. What added to the loſs of the latter, was the murder of one of their traders, by the Indians, about this period. Of theſe people not above eighty men have been known to the traders from Canada, but they conſiſt of a much greater number.

The Portage de Traite, as has been already hinted, received its name from Mr. Joſeph Frobiſher, who penetrated into this part of the country from Canada, as early as the years 1774 and 1775, where he met with the Indians in the ſpring, on their way to Churchill, according to annual cuſtom, with their canoes full of valuable furs. They traded with him for as many of them as his canoes could carry, and in conſequence of this tranſaction, the Portage received and has ſince retained its preſent appellation. He alſo denominated theſe waters the Engliſh River. The Miſſinipi, is the name which it received from the Kniſteneaux, when they firſt came to this country, and either deſtroyed or drove back the natives, whom they held in great contempt, on many accounts, but particularly for their ignorance in hunting the beaver, as well as in preparing, ſtretching, and drying the ſkins of thoſe animals. And as a ſign of their deriſion, they ſtretched the ſkin of a frog and hung it up at the Portage. This was, at that time, the utmoſt extent of their conqueſt or warfa-

ring-progreſs

ring-progreſs Weſt, and is in latitude 55. 25. North, and longitude 103¾. Weſt. The river here, which bears the appearance of a lake, takes its name from the Portage, and is full of iſlands. It runs from Eaſt to Weſt about ſixten miles, and is from four to five miles broad. Then ſucceded falls and caſcades which form what is called the grand rapid. From thence there is a ſucceſſion of ſmall lakes and rivers, interrupted by rapids and falls, viz, the Portage de Bareel, the Portage de L'Iſle, and that of the Rapid River. The courſe is twenty miles from Eaſt-South-Eaſt to North-North-Weſt. The Rapid-River Lake then runs Weſt five miles, and is of an oval form. The rapid river is the diſcharge of Lake la Rouge, where there has been an eſtabliſhment for trade from the year 178[illegible]. Since the ſmall pox ravaged theſe parts, there have been but few inhabitants; theſe are of the Kniſteneaux tribe, and do not exceed thirty men. The direct navigation continues to be through rivers and canals, interrupted by rapids; and the diſtance to the firſt Décharge is four miles, in a Weſterly direction. Then follows Lake de la Montagne, which runs South-South-Weſt three miles and an half, then North ſix miles, through narrow channels, formed by iſlands, and continues North-North-Weſt five miles, to the portage of the ſame name, which is no ſooner croſſed, than another appears in ſight, leading

to the Otter Lake, from whence it is nine miles Weſterly to the Otter Portage, in latitude 55. 39. Between this and the Portage du Diable, are ſeveral rapids, and the diſtance three miles and an half. Then ſucceeds the lake of the ſame name, running from South-Eaſt to North-Weſt, five miles, and Weſt four miles and an half. There is then a ſucceſſion of ſmall lakes, rapids, and falls, producing the Portage des Ecors, Portage du Galet, and Portage des Morts, the whole comprehending a diſtance of ſix miles, to the lake of the latter name. On the left ſide is a point covered with human bones, the relics of the ſmall pox; which circumſtance gave the Portage and the lake this melancholy denomination. Its courſe is South-Weſt fifteen miles, while its breadth does not exceed three miles. From thence a rapid river leads to Portage de Hallier, which is followed by Lake de L'Iſle d'Ours: it is, however, improperly called a lake, as it contains frequent impediments amongſt its iſlands, from rapids. There is a very dangerous one about the centre of it, which is named the rapid qui ne parle point, or that never ſpeaks, from its ſilent whirlpool-motion. In ſome of the whirlpools the ſuction is ſo powerful, that they are carefully avoided. At ſome diſtance from the ſilent rapid, is a narrow ſtrait, where the Indians have painted red figures on the face of a rock, and where it was their cuſtom formerly to make

an

an offering of ſome of the articles which they had with them, in their way to and from Churchill. The courſe in this lake, which is very meandering, may be eſtimated at thirty-eight miles, and is terminated by the Portage du Canot Tourner, from the danger to which thoſe are ſubject who venture to run this rapid. From thence a river of one mile and an half North-Weſt courſe leads to the Portage de Bouleau, and in about half a mile to Portage des Epingles, ſo called from the ſharpneſs of its ſtones. Then follows the Lake des Souris, the direction acroſs which is amongſt iſlands, North-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles. In this traverſe is an iſland, which is remarkable for a very large ſtone, in the form of a bear, on which the natives have painted the head and ſnout of that animal; and here they alſo were formerly accuſtomed to offer ſacrifices. This lake is ſeparated only by a narrow ſtrait from the Lake du Serpent, which runs North-North-Weſt ſeven miles, to a narrow channel, that connects it with another lake, bearing the ſame name, and running the ſame courſe for eleven miles, when the rapid of the ſame denomination is entered on the Weſt ſide of the lake. It is to be remarked here, that for about three or four miles on the North-Weſt ſide of this lake, there is an high bank of clay and ſand, clothed with cypreſs trees, a circumſtance which is not obſervable on any lakes hitherto mentioned, as they are

are bounded, particularly on the North, by black and grey rocks. It may alſo be conſidered as a moſt extraordinary circumſtance that the Chepewyans go North-Weſt from hence to the barren grounds, which are their own country, without the aſſiſtance of canoes; as it is well known that in every other part which has been deſcribed, from Cumberland Houſe, the country is broken on either ſide of the direction to a great extent: ſo that a traveller could not go at right angles with any of the waters already mentioned, without meeting with others in every eight or ten miles. This will alſo be found to be very much the caſe in proceeding to Portage la Loche.

The laſt mentioned rapid is upwards of three miles long, North-Weſt by Weſt; there is, however, no carrying, as the line and poles are ſufficient to drag up the canoe againſt the current. Lake Croche is then croſſed in a Weſterly direction of ſix miles, though its whole length may be twice that diſtance; after which it contracts to a river that runs Weſterly for ten miles, when it forms a bend, which is left to the South, and entering a proportion of its waters called the Graſs River, whoſe meandering courſe is about ſix miles, but in a direct line not more than half that length, where it receives its waters from the great river, which then runs Weſterly eleven miles before it forms the Knee Lake, whoſe direction is

to

to the North of Weſt. It is full of iſlands for eighteen miles, and its greateſt apparent breadth it not more than five miles. The Portage of the ſame name is ſeveral hundred yards long, and over large ſtones. Its latitude is 55. 50. and longitude 106. 30. Two miles further North is the commencement of the Croche Rapid, which is a ſucceſſion of caſcades for about three miles, making a bend due South to the Lake du Primeau, whoſe courſe is various, and through iſlands, to the diſtance of about fifteen miles. The banks of this lake are low, ſtony, and marſhy, whoſe graſs and ruſhes afford ſhelter and food to great numbers of wild fowl. At its Weſtern extremity is Portage la Puiſe, from whence the river takes a meandering courſe, widening and contracting at intervals, and is much interrupted by rapids. After a Weſterly courſe of twenty miles, it reaches Portage Pellet. From hence, in the courſe of ſeven miles, are three rapids, to which ſucceeds the Shagoina Lake, which may be eighteen miles in circumference. Then Shagoina ſtrait and rapid leads into the Lake of Iſle à la Croſſe, in which the courſe is South twenty miles, and South-South-Weſt fourteen miles, to the Point au Sable; oppoſite to which is the diſcharge of the Beaver-River, bearing South ſix miles; the lake in the diſtance run, does not exceed twelve miles in its greateſt breadth. It now turns Weſt-South-Weſt,

the iſle à la Croiſée being on the South, and the main land on the North; and it clears the one and the other in the diſtance of three miles, the water preſenting an open horizon to right and left: that on the left formed by a deep narrow bay, about ten leagues in depth; and that to the right by what is called la Riviere Creuſe, or Deep River, being a canal of ſtill water, which is here four miles wide. On following the laſt courſe, Iſle à la Croſſe Fort appears on a low iſthmus, at the diſtance of five miles, and is in latitude 55. 25. North, and longitude 107. 48. Weſt.

This lake and fort take their names from the iſland juſt mentioned, which, as has been already obſerved, received it denomination from the game of the croſs, which forms a principal amuſement among the natives.

The ſituation of this lake, the abundance of the fineſt fiſh in the world to be found in its waters, the richneſs of ſurrounding banks and foreſts, in mooſe and fallow deer, with the vaſt numbers of the ſmaller tribes of animals, whole ſkins are precious, and the numerous flocks of wild fowl that frequent it in the ſpring and fall, make it a moſt deſirable ſpot for the conſtant reſidence of ſome, and the occaſional rendezvous of others of the inhabitants of the country, particularly of the Kniſteneaux.

Who the original people were that were driven from

from it, when conquered by the Kniſteneaux is not now known, as not a ſingle veſtige remains of them. The latter, and the Chepewyans, are the only people that have been known here; and it is evident that the laſt-mentioned conſider themſelves as ſtrangers, and ſeldom remain longer than three or four years, without viſiting their relations and friends in the barren grounds, which they term their native country. They were for ſometime treated by the Kniſteneaux as enemies; who now allow them to hunt to the North of the track which has been deſcribed, from Fort du Traite upwards, but when the occaſionally meet them, they inſiſt on contributions, and frequently puniſh reſiſtance with their arms. This is ſometimes done at the forts, or places of trade, but then it appears to be a voluntary gift. A treat of rum is expected on the occaſion, which the Chepewyans on no other account ever purchaſe; and thoſe only who have had frequent intercourſe with the Kniſteneaux have any inclination to drink it.

When the Europeans firſt penetrated into this country, in 1777, the people of both tribes were numerous, but the ſmall pox was fatal to them all, ſo that there does not exiſt of the one, at preſent, more than forty reſident families; and the other has been from about thirty to two hundred families. Theſe numbers are applicable to the conſtant and leſs ambitious inhabitants, who are ſatisfied with

the quiet poſſeſſion of a country affording, without riſk or much trouble, every thing neceſſary to their comfort; for ſince traders have ſpread themſelves over it, it is no more the rendezvous of the errant Kniſteneaux, part of whom uſed annually to return thither from the country of the Beaver River, which they had explored to its ſource in their war and hunting excurſions and as far as the Saſkatchiwine, where they ſometimes met people of their own nation, who had proſecuted ſimilar conqueſts up that river. In that country they found abundance of fiſh and animals, ſuch as have been already deſcribed, with the addition of the Buffalos, who range in the partial patches of meadow ſcattered along the rivers and lakes. From thence they returned in the ſpring to the friends whom they had left; and, at the ſame time met with others who had penetrated, with the ſame deſigns, into the Athabaſca country, which will be deſcribed hereafter.

The ſpring was the period of this joyful meeting, when their time was occupied in feaſting, dancing, and other paſtimes, which were occaſionally ſuſpended for ſacrifice, and religious ſolemnity: while the narratives of their travels, and the hiſtory of their wars, amuſed and animated the feſtival. The time of rejoicing was but ſhort, and was ſoon interrupted by the neceſſary preparations for their annual journey to Churchill, to exchange

their

their furs for ſuch European articles as were now become neceſſary to them. The ſhortneſs of the ſeaſons, and the great length of their way requiring the utmoſt diſpatch, the moſt active men of the tribe, with their youngeſt women, and a few of their children undertook the voyage, under the direction of ſome of their chiefs, following the waters already deſcribed, to their diſcharge at Churchill Factory, which are called, as has already been obſerved, the Miſſinipi, or Great Waters. There they remained no longer than was ſufficient to barter their commodities, with a ſupernumerary day or two to gratify themſelves with the indulgence of ſpirituous liquors. At the ſame time the inconſiderable quantity they could purchaſe to carry away with them, for a regale with their friends, was held ſacred, and reſerved to heighten the enjoyment of their return home, when the amuſements, feſtivity, and religious ſolemnities of the ſpring were repeated. The uſual time appropriated to theſe convivialities being completed, they ſeparated, to purſue their different objects; and if they were determined to go to war, they made the neceſſary arrangements for their future operations.

But we muſt now renew the progreſs of the route. It is not more than two miles from Iſle à la Croſſe Fort, to a point of land which forms a cheek of that part of the lake called the Riviere Creuſe, which preſerves the breadth already mentioned for upwards

wards of twenty miles; then contracts to about two, for the diſtance of ten miles more, when it opens to Lake Clear, which is very wide, and commands an open horizon, keeping the Weſt ſhore for ſix miles. The whole of the diſtance mentioned is about North-Weſt, when, by a narrow, crooked channel, turning to the South of Weſt, the entry is made into Lake du Bœuf, which is contracted near the middle, by a projecting ſandy point; independent of which it may be deſcribed as from ſix to twelve miles in breadth, thirty-ſix miles long, and in a North-Weſt direction. At the North-Weſt end, in latitude 56. 8. it receives the waters of the river la Loche, which, in the fall of the year, is very ſhallow, and navigated with difficulty even by half-laden canoes. Its water is not ſufficient to from ſtrong rapids, though from its rocky bottom the canoes are frequently in conſiderable danger. Including its meanders, the courſe of this river may be computed at twenty-four miles, and receives its firſt waters from the lake of the ſame name, which is about twenty miles long, and ſix wide; into which a ſmall river flows, ſufficient to bear loaded canoes, for about a mile and an half, where the navigation ceaſes; and the canoes, with their lading, are carried over the Portage la Loche for thirteen miles.

This portage is the ridge that divides the waters which diſcharge themſelves into Hudſon's Bay, from thoſe

those that flow into the Northern ocean, and is in the latitude 56. 20. and longitude 109. 15. West. It runs South West until it loses its local height between the Saskatchiwine and Elk Rivers; close on the bank of the former, in latitude 53. 36. North, and longitude 113. 45. West, it may be traced in an Easterly direction toward latitude 58. 12. North, and longitude 103½. West, when it appears to take its course due North, and may probably reach the Frozen Seas.

From Lake le Souris, the banks of the rivers and lakes display a smaller portion of solid rock. The land is low and stony, intermixed with a light, sandy soil, and clothed with wood. That of the Beaver River is of a more productive quality: but no part of it has ever been cultivated by the natives or Europeans, except a small garden at the Isle a la Crosse, which well repaid the labour bestowed upon it.

The Portage la Loche is of a level surface, in some parts abounding with stones, but in general it is an entire sand, and covered with the cypress, the pine, the spruce fir, and other trees natural to its soil. Within three miles of the North-West termination, there is a small round lake, whose diameter does not exceed a mile, and which affords a trifling respite to the labour of carrying. Within a mile of the termination of the Portage is a very steep precipice, whose ascent and descent appears

to be equally impracticable in any way, as it conſiſts of a ſucceſſion of eight hills, ſome of which are almoſt perpendicular; nevertheleſs, the Canadians contrive to ſurmount all theſe difficulties, even with their canoes and lading.

This precipice, which riſes upwards of a thouſand feet above the plain beneath it, commands a moſt extenſive, romantic, and raviſhing proſpect. From thence the eye looks down on the courſe of the little river, by ſome called the Swan river, and by others, the Clear-Water and Pelican river, beautifully meandering for upwards of thirty miles. The valley, which is at once refreſhed and adorned by it, is about three miles in breadth, and is confined by two lofty ridges of equal height, diſplaying a moſt delightful intermixture of wood and lawn, and ſtretching on till the blue miſt obſcures the proſpect. Some parts of the inclining heights are covered with ſtately foreſts, relieved by promontories of the fineſt verdure, where the elk and buffalo find paſture. Theſe are contraſted by ſpots where fire has deſtroyed the woods, and left a dreary void behind it. Nor, when I beheld this wonderful diſplay of uncultivated nature, was the moving ſcenery of human occupation wanting to complete the picture. From this elevated ſituation, I beheld my people, diminiſhed, as it were, to half their ſize, employed in pitching their tents in a charming meadow, and among the canoes, which,

being

being turned upon their ſides, preſented their reddened bottoms in contraſt with the ſurrounding verdure. At the ſame time, the proceſs of gumming them produced numerous ſmall ſpires of ſmoke, which, as they roſe, enlivened the ſcene, and at length blended with the larger columns that aſcended from the fires where the ſuppers were preparing. It was in the month of September when I enjoyed a ſcene, of which I do not preſume to give an adequate deſcription; and as it was the rutting ſeaſon of the elk, the whiſtling of that animal was heard in all the variety which the echoes could afford it.

This river, which waters and reflects ſuch enchanting ſcenery, runs, including its windings, upwards of eighty miles, when it diſcharges itſelf in the Elk River, according to the denomination of the natives, but commonly called by the white people, the Athabaſca River, in latitude 56. 42. North.

At a ſmall diſtance from Portage la Loche, ſeveral carrying-places interrupt the navigation of the river; about the middle of which are ſome mineral ſprings, whoſe margins are covered with ſulphureous incruſtations. At the junction or fork, the Elk River is about three quarters of a mile in breadth, and runs in a ſteady current, ſometimes contracting, but never increaſing its channel, till, after receiving ſeveral ſmall ſtreams, it diſcharges

itself into the Lake of the Hills, in latitude 58. 30 North. At about twenty-four miles from the Fork, are some bitumenous fountains, into which a pole of twenty feet long may be inserted without the least resistance. The bitumen is in a fluid state, and when mixed with gum, or the resinous substance collected from the spruce fir, serves to gum the canoes. In its heated state it emits a smell like that of sea-coal. The banks of the river, which are there very elevated, discover veins of the same bitumenous quality. At a small distance from the Fork, houses have been erected for the convenience of trading with a party of the Knisteneaux, who visit the adjacent country for the purpose of hunting.

At the distance of about forty miles from the lake, is the Old Establishment, which has been already mentioned, as formed by Mr. Pond in the year 1778-9, and which was the only one in this part of the world, till the year 1785. In the year 1788, is was transferred to the Lake of the Hills, and formed on a point on its Southern side, at about eight miles from the discharge of the river. It was named Fort Chepewyan, and is in latitude 58. 38. North, longitude 110. 26. West, and much better situated for trade and fishing, as the people here have recourse to water for their support.

This being the place which I made my head-quarters for eight years, and from whence I took my

my departure, on both my expeditions, I ſhall give ſome account of it, with the manner of carrying on the trade there, and other circumſtances connected with it.

The laden canoes which leave Lake la Pluie about the firſt of Auguſt, do not arrive here till the latter end of September, or the beginning of October, when a neceſſary proportion of them is diſpatched up the Peace River to trade with the Beaver and Rocky-Mountain Indians. Others are ſent to the Slave River and Lake, or beyond them, and traffic with the inhabitants of that country. A ſmall part of them, if not left at the Fork of the Elk River, return thither for the Kniſteneaux, while the reſt of the people and merchandiſe remain here to carry on trade with the Chepewyans.

Here have I arrived with ninety or an hundred men without any proviſion for their ſuſtenance; for whatever quantity might have been obtained from the natives during the ſummer, it could not be more than ſufficient for the people diſpatched to their different poſts; and even if there were a caſual ſuperfluity, it was abſolutely neceſſary to preſerve it untouched, for the demands of the ſpring. The whole dependance, therefore, of thoſe who remained, was on the lake, and fiſhing implements for the means of our ſupport. The nets are ſixty fathom in length, when ſet, and contain fifteen meſhes of five inches in depth. The manner of

uſing

uſing them is as follows : A ſmall ſtone and wooden buoy are faſtened to the ſide-line oppoſite to each other, at about the diſtance of two fathoms : when the net is carefully thrown into the water the ſtone ſinks it to the bottom, while the buoy keeps it at its full extent, and it is ſecured in its ſituation by a ſtone at either end. The nets are viſited every day, and taken out every other day to be cleaned and dried. This is a very ready operation when the waters are not frozen, but when the froſt has ſet in, and the ice has acquired its greateſt thickneſs, which is ſometimes as much as five feet, holes are cut in it at the diſtance of thirty feet from each other, to the full length of the net ; one of them is larger than the reſt, being generally about four feet ſquare, and is called the baſon : by means of them, and poles of a proportionable length, the nets are placed in and drawn out of the water. The ſetting of hooks and lines is ſo ſimple an employment as to render a deſcription unneceſſary. The white fiſh are the principal object of purſuit : they ſpawn in the fall of the year, and, at about the ſetting in of the hard froſt, crowd in ſhoals to the ſhallow water, when as many as poſſible are taken, in order that a portion of them may be laid by in the froſt to provide againſt the ſcarcity of winter ; as, during that ſeaſon, the fiſh of every deſcription decreaſe in the lakes, if they do not altogether diſappear. Some have ſuppoſed that during this period

they

they are ſtationary, or aſſume an inactive ſtate. If there ſhould be any intervals of warm weather during the fall, it is neceſſary to ſuſpend the fiſh by the tail, though they are not ſo good as thoſe which are altogether preſerved by the froſt. In this ſtate they remain to the beginning of April, when they have been found as ſweet as when they were caught. *

Thus do theſe voyagers live, year after year, entirely upon fiſh, without even the quickening flavour of ſalt, or the variety of any farinaceous root or vegetable. Salt, however, if their habits had not rendered it unneceſſary, might be obtained in this country to the Weſtward of the Peace River, where it loſes its name in that of the Slave River, from the numerous ſalt-ponds and ſprings to be found there, which will ſupply in any quantity, in a ſtate of concretion, and perfectly white and clean. When the Indians paſs that way they bring a ſmall quantity to the fort, with other articles of traffic.

During a ſhort period of the ſpring and fall, great numbers of wild fowl frequent this country, which prove a very gratifying food after ſuch a long privation of fleſh-meat. It is remarkable,

* This fiſhery requires the moſt unremitting attention, as the voyaging Canadians are equally indolent, extravagant, and improvident, when left to themſelves, and rival the ſavages in a neglect of the morrow.

however,

however, that the Canadians who frequent the Peace, Saſkatchiwine, and Aſſiniboin rivers, and live altogether on veniſon, have a leſs healthy appearance than thoſe whoſe ſuſtenance is obtained from the waters. At the ſame time the ſcurvy is wholly unknown among them.

In the fall of the year the natives meet the traders at the forts, where they barter the furs or proviſions which they may have procured: they then obtain credit, and proceed to hunt the beavers, and do not return till the beginning of the year; when they are again fitted out in the ſame manner and come back the latter end of March, or the beginning of April. They are now unwilling to repair to the beaver hunt until the waters are clear of ice, that they may kill them with fire-arms, which the Chepewyans are averſe to employ. The major part of the latter return to the barren grounds, and live during the ſummer with their relations and friends in the enjoyment of that plenty which is derived from numerous herds of deer. But thoſe of that tribe who are moſt partial to theſe deſarts, cannot remain there in winter, and they are obliged, with the deer, to take ſhelter in the woods during that rigorous ſeaſon, when they contrive to kill a few beavers, and ſend them by young men, to exchange for iron utenſils and ammunition.

Till the year 1782, the people of Athabaſca ſent

ſent or carried their furs regularly to Fort Churchill, Hudſon's Bay; and ſome of them have, ſince that time, repaired thither, notwithſtanding they could have provided themſelves with all the neceſſaries which they required. The difference of the price ſet on goods here and at that factory, made it an object with the Chepewyans, to undertake a journey of five or ſix months, in the courſe of which they were reduced to the moſt painful extremities, and often loſt their lives from hunger and fatigue. At preſent, however, this traffic is in a great meaſure diſcontinued, as they were obliged to expend in the courſe of their journey, that very ammunition which was its moſt alluring object.

Some Account of the Kniſteneaux Indians.

THESE people are ſpread over a vaſt extent of country. Their language is the ſame as that of the people who inhabit the coaſt of Britiſh America on the Atlantic, with the exception of the Eſquimaux*, and continues along the Coaſt of Labrador,

* The ſimilarity between their language, and that of the Algonquins, is an unequivocal proof that they are the ſame people. Specimens of their reſpective tongues will be hereafter given.

brador, and the gulph and banks of St. Laurence to Montreal. The line then follows the Utawas river to its ſource; and continues from thence nearly Weſt along the high lands which divide the waters that fall into Lake Superior and Hudſon's Bay. It then proceeds till it ſtrikes the middle part of the river Winipic, following that water through the Lake Winipic, to the diſcharge of the Saſkatchiwine into it; from thence it accompanies the latter to Fort George, when the line, ſtriking by the head of the Beaver River to the Elk River, runs along its banks to its diſcharge in the Lake of the Hills; from which it may be carried back Eaſt, to the Iſle à la Croſſe, and ſo on to Churchill by the Miſſinipi. The whole of the tract between this line and Hudſon's Bay and Straits, (except that of the Eſquimaux in the latter), may be ſaid to be excluſively the country of the Kniſteneaux. Some of them, indeed, have penetrated further Weſt and South to the Red River, to the South of Lake Winipic, and the South branch of the Saſkatchiwine.

They are of a moderate ſtature, well proportioned, and of great activity. Examples of deformity are ſeldom to be ſeen among them. Their complexion is of a copper colour, and their hair black, which is common to all the natives of North America. It is cut in various forms, according to the fancy of the ſeveral tribes, and by ſome is left in

the

the long, lank, flow of nature. They very generally extract their beards, and both ſexes manifeſt a diſpoſition to pluck the hair from every part of the body and limbs. Their eyes are black, keen, and penetrating; their countenance open and agreeable, and it is a principal object of their vanity to give every poſſible decoration to their perſons. A material article in their toilettes is vermilion, which they contraſt with their native blue, white, and brown earths, to which charcoal is frequently added.

Their dreſs is at once ſimple and commodious. It conſiſts of tight leggins, reaching near the hip: a ſtrip of cloth or leather, called aſſian, about a foot wide, and five feet long, whoſe ends are drawn inwards and hang behind and before, over a belt tied round the waiſt for that purpoſe: a cloſe veſt or ſhirt reaching down to the former garment, and cinctured with a broad ſtrip of parchment faſtened with thongs behind; and a cap for the head, conſiſting of a piece of fur, or ſmall ſkin, with the bruſh of the animal as a ſuſpended ornament: a kind of robe is thrown occaſionally over the whole of the dreſs, and ſerves both night and day. Theſe articles, with the addition of ſhoes and mittens, conſtitute the variety of their apparel. The materials vary according to the ſeaſon, and conſiſt of dreſſed mooſe-ſkin, beaver prepared with the fur, or European woollens. The leather is neatly

painted,

painted, and fancifully worked in ſome parts with porcupine quills, and mooſe-deer hair: the ſhirts and leggins are alſo adorned with fringe and taſſels; nor are the ſhoes and mittens without ſomewhat of appropriate decoration, and worked with a conſiderable degree of ſkill and taſte. Theſe habiliments are put on, however, as fancy or convenience ſuggeſts; and they will ſometimes proceed to the chaſe in the ſevereſt froſt, covered only with the ſlighteſt of them. Their head-dreſſes are compoſed of the feathers of the ſwan, the eagle, and other birds. The teeth, horns, and claws of different animals, are alſo the occaſional ornaments of the head and neck. Their hair, however arranged, is always beſmeared with greaſe. The making of every article of dreſs is a female occupation; and the women, though by no means inattentive to the decoration of their own perſons, appear to have a ſtill greater degree of pride in attending to the appearance of the men, whoſe faces are painted with more care than thoſe of the women.

The female dreſs is formed of the ſame materials as thoſe of the other ſex, but of a different make and arrangement. Their ſhoes are commonly plain, and their leggins gartered beneath the knee. The coat, or body covering, falls down to the middle of the leg, and is faſtened over the ſhoulders with cords, a flap or cape turning down about eight inches, both before and behind, and

agreeably

agreeably ornamented with quill-work and fringe; the bottom is alſo fringed, and fancifully painted as high as the knee. As it is very looſe, it is encloſed round the waiſt with a ſtiff belt, decorated with taſſels, and faſtened behind. The arms are covered to the wriſt, with detached ſleeves, which are ſewed as far as the bend of the arm; from thence they are drawn up to the neck, and the corners of them fall down behind, as low as the waiſt. The cap, when they wear one, conſiſts of a certain quantity of leather or cloth, ſewed at one end, by which means it is kept on the head, and, hanging down the back, is faſtened to the belt, as well as under the chin. The upper garment is a robe like that worn by the men. Their hair is divided on the crown, and tied behind, or ſometimes faſtened in large knots over the ears. They are fond of European articles, and prefer them to their own native commodities. Their ornaments conſiſt in common with all ſavages, in bracelets, rings, and ſimilar baubles. Some of the women tatoo three perpendicular lines, which are ſometimes double: one from the centre of the chin to that of the under lip, and one parallel on either ſide to the corner of the mouth.

Of all the nations which I have ſeen on this continent, the Kniſteneaux women are the moſt comely. Their figure is generally well proportioned, and the regularity of their features would be ac-

knowledged by the more civilized people of Europe. Their complexion has lefs of that dark tinge which is common to thofe favages who have lefs cleanly habits.

Thefe people are, in general, fubject to few diforders. The lues venerea, however, is a common complaint, but cured by the application of fimples, with whofe virtues they appear to be well acquainted. They are alfo fubject to fluxes, and pains in the breaft, which fome have attributed to the very cold and keen air which they inhale; but I fhould imagine that thefe complaints muft frequently proceed from their immoderate indulgence in fat meat at their feafts, particularly when they have been preceded by long fafting.

They are naturally mild and affable, as well as juft in their dealings, not only among themfelves, but with ftrangers. * They are alfo generous and hofpitable, and good-natured in the extreme, except when their nature is perverted by the inflammatory influence of fpirituous liquors. To their children they are indulgent to a fault. The father, though he affumes no command over them, is ever anxious to inftruct them in all the preparatory qualifications for war and hunting; while the mother is equally

* They have been called thieves, but when vice can with juftice be attributed to them, it may be traced to their connection with the civilized people who come into their country to traffic.

attentive

attentive to her daughters in teaching them every thing that is confidered as neceffary to their character and fituation. It does not appear that the hufband makes any diftinction between the children of his wife, though they may be the offspring of different fathers. Illegitimacy is only attached to thofe who are born before their mothers have cohabited with any man by the title of hufband.

It does not appear, that chaftity is confidered by them as a virtue; or that fidelity is believed to be effential to the happinefs of wedded life. Though it fometimes happens that the infidelity of a wife is punifhed by the hufband with the lofs of her hair, nofe, and perhaps life; fuch feverity proceeds from its having been practifed without his permiffion: for a temporary interchange of wives is not uncommon; and the offer of their perfons is confidered as a neceffary part of the hofpitality due to ftrangers.

When a man lofes his wife, it is confidered as a duty to marry her fifter, if fhe has one; or he may, if he pleafes, have them both at the fame time.

It will appear from the fatal confequences I have repeatedly imputed to the ufe of fpirituous liquors, that I more particularly confider thefe people as having been, morally fpeaking, great fufferers from their communication with the fubjects of civilized nations. At the fame time they were not, in a ftate

ſtate of nature, without their vices, and ſome of them of a kind which is the moſt abhorrent to cultivated and reflecting man. I ſhall only obſerve that inceſt and beſtiality are common among them.

When a young man marries, he immediately goes to live with the father and mother of his wife, who treat him, neverthelefs, as a perfect ſtranger, till after the birth of his firſt child: he then attaches himſelf more to them than his own parents: and his wife no longer gives him any other denomination than that of the father of her child.

The profeſſion of the men is war and hunting, and the more active ſcene of their duty is the field of battle, and the chaſe in the woods. They alſo ſpear fiſh, but the management of the nets is left to the women. The females of this nation are in the ſame ſubordinate ſtate with thoſe of all other ſavage tribes; but the ſeverity of their labour is much diminiſhed by their ſituation on the banks of lakes and rivers, where they employ canoes. In the winter, when the waters are frozen, they make their journies, which are never of any great length, with ſledges drawn by dogs. They are, at the ſame time ſubject to every kind of domeſtic drudgery: they dreſs the leather, make the clothes and ſhoes, weave the nets, collect wood, erect the tents, fetch water, and perform every culinary ſervice; ſo that when the duties of maternal care are added, it will appear that the life of theſe women is an uninterrupted

terrupted ſucceſſion of toil and pain. This, indeed, is the ſenſe they entertain of their own ſituation; and, under the influence of that ſentiment, they are ſometimes known to deſtroy their female children, to ſave them from the miſeries which they themſelves have ſuffered. They alſo have a ready way, by the uſe of certain ſimples, of procuring abortions, which they ſometimes practiſe, from their hatred of the father, or to ſave themſelves the trouble which children occaſion: and, as I have been credibly informed, this unnatural act is repeated without any injury to the health of the women who perpetrate it.

The funeral rites begin, like all other ſolemn ceremonials, with ſmoking, and are concluded by a feaſt. The body is dreſſed in the beſt habiliments poſſeſſed by the deceaſed, or his relations, and is then depoſited in a grave, lined with branches: ſome domeſtic utenſils are placed on it, and a kind of canopy erected over it. During this ceremony, great lamentations are made, and if the departed perſon is very much regretted the near relations cut off their hair, pierce the fleſhy part of their thighs and arms with arrows, knives, &c. and blacken their faces with charcoal. If they have diſtinguiſhed themſelves in war, they are ſometimes laid on a kind of ſcaffolding; and I have been informed that women, as in the Eaſt, have been known to ſacrifice themſelves to the manes of their huſbands.

husbands. The whole of the property belonging to the departed person is destroyed, and the relations take in exchange for the wearing apparel, any rags that will cover their nakedness. The feast bestowed on the occasion, which is, or at least used to be, repeated annually, is accompanied with eulogiums on the deceased, and without any acts of ferocity. On the tomb are carved or painted the symbols of his tribe, which are taken from the different animals of the country.

Many and various are the motives which induce a savage to engage in war. To prove his courage, or to revenge the death of his relations, or some of his tribe, by the massacre of an enemy. If the tribe feel themselves called upon to go to war, the elders convene the people, in order to know the general opinion. If it be for war, the chief publishes his intention to smoke in the sacred stem at a certain period, to which solemnity, meditation and fasting are required as preparatory ceremonials. When the people are thus assembled, and the meeting sanctified by the custom of smoking, the chief enlarges on the causes which have called them together, and the necessity of the measures proposed on the occasion. He then invites those who are willing to follow him, to smoke out of the sacred stem, which is considered as the token of enrollment; and if it should be the general opinion, that assistance is necessary, others are invited, with great formality,

to

to join them. Every individual who attends theſe meetings brings ſomething with him as a token of his warlike intention, or as an object of ſacrifice, which, when the aſſembly diſſolves, is ſuſpended from poles near the place of council.

They have frequent feaſts, and particular circumſtances never fail to produce them; ſuch as a tedious illneſs, long faſting, &c. On theſe occaſions it is uſual for the perſon who means to give the [illegible]ment, to announce his deſign, on a certain day, of ope[illegible]g the medicine bag and ſmoking [illegible] of his ſacr[illegible]d ſtem. This declaration is conſidered as a ſa[illegible]cred vow that cannot be broken. There are alſ[illegible] ſtated periods, ſuch as the ſpring [illegible]d autumn, when they engage in very long and ſolemn cere[illegible]onies. On theſe occaſions dogs are offered as ſacrifices, and thoſe which are very fat, and milk-white, are preferred. They alſo make large offerings of their property, whatever it may be. The ſcene of theſe ceremonies is in an open incloſure on the bank of a river or lake, and in the moſt conſpicuous ſituation, in order that ſuch as are paſſing along or travelling, may be induced to make their offerings. There is alſo a particular cuſtom among them, that, on theſe occaſions, if any of the tribe, or even a ſtranger, ſhould be paſſing by, and be in real want of any thing that is diſplayed as an offering, he has a right to take it, ſo that he replaces it with ſome article he can ſpare,

though it be of far inferior value: but to take or touch any thing wantonly is conſidered as a ſacrilegious act, and highly inſulting to the great Maſter of life, to uſe their own expreſſion, who is the ſacred object of their devotion.

The ſcene of private ſacrifice is the lodge of the perſon who performs it, which is prepared for that purpoſe by removing every thing out of it, and ſpreading green branches in every part. The fire and aſhes are alſo taken away. A new hearth is made of freſh earth, and another fire is lighted. The owner of the dwelling remains alone in it; and he begins the ceremony by ſpreading a piece of new cloth, or a well-dreſſed mooſe-ſkin neatly painted, on which he opens his medicine-bag and expoſes its contents, conſiſting of various articles. The principal of them is a kind of houſehold god, which is a ſmall carved image about eight inches long. Its firſt covering is of down, over which a piece of beech bark is cloſely tied, and the whole is enveloped in ſeveral folds of red and blue cloth. This little figure is an object of the moſt pious regard. The next article is his war-cap, which is decorated with the feathers and plumes of ſcarce birds, beavers, and eagle's claws, &c. There is alſo ſuſpended from it a quill or feather for every enemy whom the owner of it has ſlain in battle. The remaining contents of the bag are, a piece of Brazil tobacco, ſeveral roots and ſimples, which are

are in great eſtimation for their medicinal qualities, and a pipe. Theſe articles being all expoſed, and the ſtem reſting upon two forks, as it muſt not touch the ground, the maſter of the lodge ſends for the perſon he moſt eſteems, who ſits down oppoſite to him; the pipe is then filled and fixed to the ſtem. A pair of wooden pincers is provided to put the fire in the pipe, and a double-pointed pin, to empty it of the remnant of tobacco which is not conſumed. This arrangement being made, the men aſſemble, and ſometimes the women are allowed to be humble ſpectators, while the moſt religious awe and ſolemnity pervades the whole. The Michiniwais, or Aſſiſtant, takes up the pipe, lights it, and preſents it to the officiating perſon, who receives it ſtanding and holds it between both his hands. He then turns himſelf to the Eaſt, and draws a few whiffs, which he blows to that point. The ſame ceremony he obſerves to the other three quarters, with his eyes directed upwards during the whole of it. He holds the ſtem about the middle between the three firſt fingers of both hands, and raiſing them upon a line with his forehead, he ſwings it three times round from the Eaſt, with the ſun, when, after pointing and balancing it in various directions, he repoſes it on the forks: he then makes a ſpeech to explain the deſign of their being called together, which concludes with an acknowledgment of paſt mercies, and a prayer

for

for the continuance of them, from the maſter of Life. He then ſits down, and the whole company declare their approbation and thanks by uttering the word *ho*! with an emphatic prolongation of the laſt letter. The Michiniwais then takes up the pipe and holds it to the mouth of the officiating perſon, who, after ſmoking three whiffs out of it, utters a ſhort prayer, and then goes round with it, taking his courſe from Eaſt to Weſt, to every perſon preſent, who individually ſays ſomething to him on the occaſion; and thus the pipe is generally ſmoked out; when, after turning it three or four times round his head, he drops it downwards, and replaces it in its original ſituation. He then returns the company thanks for their attendance, and wiſhes them, as well as the whole tribe, health and long life.

Theſe ſmoking rites precède every matter of great importance, with more or leſs ceremony, but always with equal ſolemnity. The utility of them will appear from the following relation.

If a chief is anxious to know the diſpoſition of his people towards him, or if he wiſhes to ſettle any difference between them, he announces his intention of opening his medicine-bag and ſmoking in his ſacred ſtem; and no man who entertains a grudge againſt any of the party thus aſſembled can ſmoke with the ſacred ſtem; as that ceremony diſſipates all differences, and is never violated.

No

No one can avoid attending on theſe occaſions; but a perſon may attend and be excuſed from aſſiſting at the ceremonies, by acknowledging that he has not undergone the neceſſary purification. The having cohabited with his wife, or any other woman, within twenty-four hours preceding the ceremony, renders him unclean, and, conſequently, diſqualifies him from performing any part of it. If a contract is entered into and ſolemniſed by the ceremony of ſmoking, it never fails of being faithfully fulfilled. If a perſon, previous to his going a journey, leaves the ſacred ſtem as a pledge of his return, no conſideration whatever will prevent him from executing his engagement.*

The chief, when he propoſes to make a feaſt, ſends quills, or ſmall pieces of wood, as tokens of invitation to ſuch as he wiſhes to partake of it. At the appointed time the gueſts arrive, each bringing a diſh or platter, and a knife, and take their ſeats on each ſide of the chief, who receives them ſitting, according to their reſpective ages. The pipe is then lighted, and he makes an equal diviſion of every thing that is provided. While the company are enjoying their meal, the chief ſings, and accompanies his ſong with the tambourin, or ſhiſhiquoi, or rattle. The gueſt who has firſt eaten

* It is however to be lamented, that of late there is a relaxation of the duties originally attached to theſe feſtivals.

his

his portion is considered as the most distinguished person. If there should be any who cannot finish the whole of their mess, they endeavour to prevail on some of their friends to eat it for them, who are rewarded for their assistance with ammunition and tobacco. It it proper also to remark, that at these feasts a small quantity of meat or drink is sacrificed, before they begin to eat, by throwing it into the fire, or on the earth.

These feasts differ according to circumstances; sometimes each man's allowance is no more than he can dispatch in a couple of hours. At other times the quantity is sufficient to supply each of them with food for a week, though it must be devoured in a day. On these occasions it is very difficult to procure substitutes, and the whole must be eaten whatever time it may require. At some of these entertainments there is a more rational arrangement, when the guests are allowed to carry home with them the superfluous part of their portions. Great care is always taken that the bones may be burned, as it would be considered a profanation were the dogs permitted to touch them.

The public feasts are conducted in the same manner, but with some additional ceremony. Several chiefs officiate at them, and procure the necessary provisions, as well as prepare a proper place of reception for the numerous company. Here the guests discourse upon public topics, re-

peat

peat the heroic deeds of their forefathers, and excite the riſing generation to follow their example. The entertainments on theſe occaſions conſiſt of dried meats, as it would not be practicable to dreſs a ſufficient quantity of freſh meat for ſuch a large aſſembly; though the women and children are excluded.

Similar feaſts uſed to be made at funerals, and annually, in honour of the dead; but they have been, for ſome time, growing into diſuſe, and I never had an opportunity of being preſent at any of them.

The women, who are forbidden to enter the places ſacred to theſe feſtivals, dance and ſing around them, and ſometimes beat time to the muſic within them; which forms an agreable contraſt.

With reſpect to their diviſions of time, they compute the length of their journies by the number of nights paſſed in performing them; and they divide the year by the ſucceſſion of moons. In this calculation, however, they are not altogether correct, as they cannot account for the odd days.

The names which they give to the moons are deſcriptive of the ſeveral ſeaſons.

May . .	Atheiky o Piſhim. .	Frog-Moon.
June . .	Oppinu o Piſhim. .	The Moon in which birds begin to lay their eggs.

July

July	Aupaſcen o Piſhim. . .	The Moon when birds caſt their feathers.
Auguſt.	Aupahou o Piſhim. . .	The Moon when the young birds begin to fly.
September	Waſkiſcon o Piſhim. . .	The Moon when the mooſe-deer caſt their horns.
October	Wiſac o Piſhim . . .	The Rutting-M[illegible]oon.
November	Thithigon Pewai o Piſhim .	Hoar-Fro[illegible]-Moon.
	Kuſkatinayoui o Piſhim .	Ice-M[illegible].
December	Pawatchicananaſis o Piſhim.	W[illegible]irlwind-Moon.
January	Kuſhapawaſticanum o Pi[illegible]im	Extreme cold M[illegible]on.
February	Kic[illegible]im. . . .	[illegible]ig M[illegible], ſome [illegible]ay, Old Moon.
March	Mickyſue Piſhim. . .	[illegible]le Moon.
April	Niſcaw o Piſhim. . .	G[illegible]

These people know the medicinal virtues of many herbs and ſimples, and apply the roots of plants and the bark of trees with ſucceſs. But the conjurers, who monopolize the medical ſcience, find it neceſſary to blend myſtery with their art, and do not communicate their knowledge. Their materia medica they adminiſter in the form of purges and clyſters; but the remedies and ſurgical operations are ſuppoſed to derive much of their effect from magic and incantation. When a bliſter riſes in the foot from the froſt, the chaffing of the ſhoe, &c. they immediately open it, and apply the heated blade of a knife to the part, which

painful

painful as it may be, is found to be efficacious. A ſharp flint ſerves them as a lancet for letting blood, as well as for ſcarification in bruiſes and ſwellings. For ſprains, the dung of an animal juſt killed is conſidered as the beſt remedy. They are very fond of European medicines, though they are ignorant of their application: and thoſe articles form a conſiderable part of the European traffic with them.

Among their various ſuperſtitions, they believe that the vapour which is ſeen to hover over moiſt and ſwampy places, is the ſpirit of ſome perſon lately dead. They alſo fancy another ſpirit which appears, in the ſhape of a man, upon the trees near the lodge of a perſon deceaſed, whoſe property has not been interred with them. He is repreſented as bearing a gun in his hand, and it is believed that he does not return to his reſt, till the property that has been withheld from the grave has been ſacrificed to it.

Examples of the Kniſteneaux and Algonquin Tongues.

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Good Spirit	Ki jai Manitou	Ki jai Manitou.
Evil Spirit	Matchi Manitou	Matchi Manitou.
Man	Ethini	Inini.
Woman	Eſquois	Ich-quois.

	Knisteneaux.	Algonquin.
Male	Nap hew	Aquoisi.
Female	Non-gense	Non-gense.
Infant	A' wash ish	Abi nont-chen.
Head	Us ti quoin	O'chiti-goine.
Forehead	Es caa tick	O catick.
Hair	Wes ty-ky	Winessis.
Eyes	Es kis och	Oskingick.
Nose	Oskiwin	O'chengewane.
Nostrils	Oo tith ee go mow	Ni-de-ni-guom.
Mouth	O toune	O tonne.
My teeth	Wip pit tah	Nibit[illegible]
Tongue	Otaithani	[illegible]ai-na-ni.
Beard	[illegible]chitoune	Omichitonn.
Brain	With i tip	A[illegible]a-e wimkan.
Ears	O tow ee gie	O-ta wagane.
Neck	O qui ow	C[illegible]oi gan.
Throat	O koot tas gy	N[illegible]o[illegible]-dagan[illegible].
Arms	O nisk	O n[illegible]
Fingers	Che chee	Ni ni[illegible] gines.
Nails	Wos kos sia	Os-ken[illegible]e.
Side	O's spig gy	Opikegan.
My back	No pis quan	Ni-pi quoini.
My belly	Nattay	Ni my sat.
Thighs	O povam	Obouame.
My knees	No che quoin nah	Ni gui tick.
Legs	Nosk	Ni gatte.
Heart	O thea	Othai.
My father	Noo ta wie	Nossai.
My mother	Nigah wei	Nigah.
My boy (son)	Negousis	Nigouisses.
My girl (daughter)	Netanis	Nidanifs.
My brother, elder	Ni stess	Nis-a-yen.
My sister, elder	Ne miss	Nimisain.
My grandfather	Ne moo shum	Ni-mi-chomiss.
My grandmother	N' o kum	No-co-miss.

My

	Knisteneaux.	Algonqnin.
My uncle	N' o'ka miss	Ni ni michomen.
My nephew	Ne too sim	Ne do jim.
My niece	Ne too sim esquois	Ni-do-jim equois.
My mother in law	Nisgouse	Ni sigousiss.
My brother in law	Nistah	Nitah.
My companion	Ne wechi wagan	Ni-wit-chi-wagan.
My husband	Ni nap pem	Ni na bem.
Blood	Mith coo	Misquoi.
Old Man	Shi nap	Aki win se.
I am angry	Ne kis si wash en	Nis katissiwine.
I fear	Ne goos tow	Nisest guse.
Joy	Ne hea tha tom	Mamoud gikisi.
Hearing	[illegible]	Oda wagan.
Track	Mis conna	Pemi ka wois.
Chief, great ruler	Haukimah	Kitchi onodis.
Thief	Kismouthesk	Ke moutiské.
Excrement	Meyee	Moui.
Buffalo	Moustouche	Pichike.
Ferret	Sigous	Shingouss.
Polecat	Shicak	Shi-kâk.
Elk	Moustouche	Michai woi.
Rein deer	Attick	Atick.
Fallow deer	Attick	Wa wasquesh.
Beaver	Amisk	Amic.
Woolverine	Qui qua katch	Quin quoagki.
Squirrel	Ennequachas	Otchi ta mou.
Minx	Sa quasue	Shaugouch.
Otter	Nekick	Ni guick.
Wolf	Mayegan	Maygan.
Hare	Wapouce	Wapouce.
Marten	Wappistan	Wabichinse.
Moose	Mouswah	Monse.
Bear	Masquâ	Macqua.
Fisher	Wijask	Od-jiick.
Lynx	Picheu	Pechou.

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Porcupine	Cau quah	Kack.
Fox	Ma kiſew	Wagouche.
Muſk Rat	Wajaſk	Wa-jack.
Mouſe	Abicuſhiſs	Wai wa be gou noge.
Cow Buffalo	Noſhi Mouſtouche	Nochena pichik.
Meat-fleſh	Wias	Wi-aſs.
Dog	Atim	Ani-mouſe.
Eagle	Makuſue	Me-guiſſis.
Duck	Sy Sip	Shi-ſip.
Crow, Corbeau	Ca Cawkeu	Ka Kak.
Swan	Wapiſeu	Wa-pe-ſy.
Turkey	Mes ſei thew	Miſſ[illegible]ay.
Pheaſants	Okes k[illegible]	[illegible]jack.
Bird	Petneſew	Pi-na-ſy.
Outard	Niſcag	Nic kack.
White Gooſe	Wey Wois	Woi wois.
Grey Gooſe	Peſtaſiſh	Pos-[illegible]-kiſk.
Partridge	Pithew	Pen ainſe.
Water Hen	Chiquibiſh	Che qui bis.
Dove	Omi Mee	O mi-mis.
Eggs	Wa Wah	Wa Weni.
Pike or Jack	Kenonge	Kenongé.
Carp	Na may bin	Na me bine.
Sturgeon	Na May	Na Maiu.
White Fiſh	Aticaming	Aticaming.
Pikrel	Oc-chaw	Oh-ga.
Fiſh (in general)	Kenongé	Ki-cons.
Spawn	Waquon	Wa qnock.
Fins	Chi chi kan	O nidj-igan.
Trout	Nay gouſe	Na Men Gouſe.
Craw Fiſh	A ſhag gee	A cha kens chaque.
Frog	Athick	O ma ka ki.
Waſp	Ah moo	A mon.
Turtle	Mikinack	Mi-ki-nack.
Snake	Kinibick	Ki nai bick.

Aw

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Awl	Oſcajick	Ma-goſe.
Needle	Saboinigan	Sha-bo-ni-gan.
Fire Steel	Appet	Scoutecgan.
Fire wood	Mich-tah	Miſſane.
Cradle	Teckinigan	Tickina-gan.
Dagger	Ta comagau	Na-ba-ke-gou-man.
Arrow	Auguſk or Atouche	Mettic ka nouins.
Fiſh Hook	Quoſquipichican	Maneton Miquiſcane.
Ax	Shegaygan	Wagagvette.
Ear-bob	Chi-kiſebiſoun	Na be chi be ſoun.
Comb	Sicahoun	Pin ack wan.
Net	Athabe	Aſſap.
Tree	Mittick	Miti-coum.
Wood	Miſtick	Mi[illegible]
Paddle	Aboi	Aboui.
Canoe	Chiman	S-chiman.
Birch Rind	Waſquoi	Wig naſs.
Bark	Waſquoi	On-na-guege.
Touch Wood	Pouſagan	Sa-ga-tagan.
Leaf	Nepeſhah	Ni-biche.
Graſs	Maſquoſi	Maſquoſi.
Raſpberries	Miſqui-meinac	Miſqui meinac.
Strawberries	O-tai-e minac	O'-tai-e minac.
Aſhes	Pecouch	Pengoui.
Fire	Scou tay	Scou tay.
Grapes	Shomenac	Shomenac.
Fog	Pakiſhihow	A Winni.
Mud	Aſus ki	A Shiſki.
Currant	Kiſijiwin	Ki ſi chi woin.
Road	Meſcanah	Mickanan.
Winter	Pipoun	Pipone.
Iſland	Miniſtick	Miniſs.
Lake	Sagayigan	Sagayigan.
Sun	Piſim	Kijis.
Moon	Tibiſca peſim (the night Sun	Dibic kijiſs.

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Day	Kigigah	Kigi gatte.
Night	Tibiſca	Dibic kawte.
Snow	Counah	So qui po.
Rain	Kimiwoin	Ki mi woini.
Drift	Pewan	Pi woine.
Hail	Shes eagan	Me qua menſan.
Ice	Meſquaming	Me quam.
Froſt	Aquatin	Gas-ga-tin.
Miſt	Picaſyow	An-quo-et.
Water	Nepec	Ni-pei.
World	Meſſe aſky (all the earth)	Miſſi achaki.
Mountain	Wach[illegible]	Watchive.
Sea	Kitchi kitchi ga ming	Kitchi-kitchi ga ming.
Morning	Kequiſhepe	Ki-ki-jep.
Mid-day	Abetah quiſheik	Na ock quoi.
Portage	Unygam	Ouni-gam.
Spring	Menouſcaming	Mino ka ming.
River	Sipee	Sipi.
Rapid	Bawaſtick	Ba wetick.
Rivulet	Sepeeſis	Sipi wes chin.
Sand	Thocaw	Ne gawe.
Earth	Aſkee	Ach ki.
Star	Attack	Anang.
Thunder	Pithuſeu	Ni mi ki.
Wind	Thoutin	No tine.
Calm	Athawoſtin	A-no-a-tine.
Heat	Quiſhipoi	Aboycé.
Evening	Ta kaſhiké	O'n-a guche.
North	Kiwoitin	Ke woitinak.
South	Sawena woon	Sha-wa-na-wang.
Eaſt	Coſhawcaſtak	Wa-ba-no-notine.
Weſt	Paquiſimow	Panguis chi-mo.
To-morrow	Wabank	Wa-bang.

Bone

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Bone	Oſkann	Oc-kann.
Broth	Michim waboi	Thaboub.
Feaſt	Ma qua ſee	Wi con qui wine.
Greaſe or oil	Pimis	Pimi-tais.
Marrow fat	Oſcan pimis	Oſka-pimitais.
Sinew	Aſstis	Attiſs.
Lodge	Wig-waum	Wi-gui-wam.
Bed	Ne pa win	Ne pai wine.
Within	Pendog ké	Pendig.
Door	Squandam	Scouandam.
Diſh	Othagan	O' na gann.
Fort	Waſgaigan	Wa-kuigan.
Sledge	Tabanaſk	Otabanac.
Cincture	Poquoatehoun	Ketche piſou.
Cap	Aſtotin	Pe Matinang.
Socks	Aſhican	A chi gan.
Shirt	Papackewyan.	Pa pa ki weyan.
Coat	Papiſe-co-wagan	Papiſe-co-wagan.
Blanket	Wape weyang	Wape weyan.
Cloth	Maneto weguin	Maneto weguin.
Thread	Aſſabab	Aſſabab.
Garters	Chi ki-biſoon	Ni gaſke-taſe beſoun.
Mittens	Aſtiſſack	Medjicawine.
Shoes	Maſkiſin	Makiſin.
Smoking bag	Kuſquepetagan	Kaſquepetagan.
Portage ſling	Apiſan	Apican.
Strait on	Goi aſk	Goi-ack.
Medicine	Mas ki kee	Macki-ki.
Red	Mes coh	Mes-cowa.
Blue	Kaſqutch (ſame as black)	O-jawes-cowa.
White	Wabiſca	Wabiſca.
Yellow	Saw waw	O jawa.
Green	Chibatiquare	O'jawes-cowa.
Brown		O'jawes-cowa.

Grey,

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
Grey, &c		O'jawes-cowa.
Ugly	Mache na gouſeu	Mous-counu-gouſe.
Handſome	Catawaſſiſeu	Nam biſſa.
Beautiful	Kiſſi Sawenogan	Quoi Natch.
Deaf	Nima petom	Ka ki be chai.
Good-natured	Mithiwaſhin	Onichiſhin.
Pregnant	Paawie	And'jioko.
Fat	Outhinen	Oui-ni-noe.
Big	Muſhikitee	Meſsha.
Small or little	Abiſaſheu	Agu-chin.
Short	Chemaſiſh	Tackoſi.
Skin	Wian	Wian.
Long	Kinwain	Kiniwa.
Strong	Maſcawa	Mache-cawa. Mas cawiſe.
Coward	Sagatahaw	Cha-goutai-ye.
Weak	Nitha miſſew	Cha gouſi.
Lean	Mahta waw	Ka wa ca toſa.
Brave	Nima Guſtaw	Son qui taige.
Young man	Oſquineguiſh	Oſkinigui.
Cold	Kiſſin	Kiſſinan.
Hot	Kichatai	Kicha tai.
Spring	Minouſcaming	Minokaming.
Summer	Nibin	Nibiqui.
Fall	Tagowagonk	Tagowag.
One	Peyac	Pecheik.
Two	Niſheu	Nige.
Three	Niſhtou	Nis-wois.
Four	Neway	Ne au.
Five	Ni-annan	Na-nan.
Six	Negoutawoeſic	Ni gouta waswois.
Seven	Niſh woiſic	Nigi-was-wois.
Eight	Jannanew	She was wois.
Nine	Shack	Shang was wois.
Ten	Mitatat	Mit-aſſwois.

Eleven

	Knisteneaux.	Algonquin.
Eleven - -	Peyac osap - -	Mitasswois, hachi, pecheik.
Twelve - -	Nisheu osap -	Mitasswois, hachi, nige.
Thirteen - -	Nichtou osap -	Mitasswois, hachi, niswois.
Fourteen - -	Neway osap -	Mitasswois, hachi, ne-au.
Fifteen - -	Niannan osap -	Mitasswois, hachi, nanan.
Sixteen - -	Nigoutawoesic osap	Mitasswois, hachi, negoutawaswois.
Seventeen - -	Nish woesic osap	Mitasswois, hachi, nigi waswois.
Eighteen - -	Jannanew osap -	Mitasswois, hachi, shiwaswois.
Nineteen - -	Shack osap -	Mitasswois, hachi, shang as wois.
Twenty - -	Nisheu mitenah -	Nigeta-nan.
Twenty-one -	Nishew mitenah peyac osap -	Nigeta nan, hachi, pechic.
Twenty-two, &c.	Nisheu mitenah nishew osap -	
Thirty - -	Nishtou mitenah	Niswois mitanan.
Forty - -	Neway mitenah -	Neau mitanan.
Fifty - -	Niannan mitenah	Nanan mitanan.
Sixty - -	Negoutawoisic mitenah - -	Nigouta was wois mitanan.
Seventy - -	Nishwoisic mitenah	Nigi was wois mitanan.
Eighty - -	Jannaeu mitenah	She was wois mitanan.

	Knifteneaux.	Algonquin.
Ninety - -	Shack mitenah -	Shang was wois mitanan.
Hundred - -	Mitana mitinah -	Ningoutwack.
Two Hundred -	Neſhew mitena a mitenah -	Nige wack.
One thouſand -	Mitenah mitena mitenah - -	Kitchi-wack.
Firſt - - -	Nican - -	Nitam.
Laſt - -	Squayatch - -	Shaquoiyanque.
More - -	Minah - -	Awa chi min.
Better - -	Athiwack mithawaſhin - -	Awachimin o nichi ſhen.
Beſt - - -	Athiwack mithawaſhin - -	Kitchi o nichi ſhin.
I, or me - -	Nitha - -	Nin.
You, or thou -	Kitha - -	Kin.
They, or them -	Withawaw -	Win na wa.
We - - -	Nithawaw - -	Nina wa.
My, or mine -	Nitayan - -	Nida yam.
Your's - -	Kitayan - -	Kitayam.
Who - -	- - -	Auoni.
Whom - -	Awoiné - -	Kegoi nin.
What - -	- - -	Wa.
His, or her's -	Otayan - -	Otayim mis.
All - - -	Kakithau - -	Kakenan.
Some, or ſome few	Pey peyac - -	Pe-pichic.
The ſame - -	Tabeſcoutch -	Mi ta yoche.
All the world -	Miſſi acki wanque	Miſhiwai aſky.
All the men -	Kakithaw Ethinyock	Miſſi Inini wock.
More - -	Mina - -	Mina wa.
Now and then -	- - -	Nannigoutengue.
Sometimes - -	I as-cow-puco.	
Seldom - -	- - -	Wica-ac-ko.

Arrive

	Knisteneaux.	Algonquin.
Arrive - -	Ta couchin -	Ta-gouchin.
Beat - -	Otamaha - -	Packit-ais.
To burn - -	Mistascasoo -	Icha-quiso.
To sing - -	Nagamoun -	Nagam.
To cut - -	Kisquishan -	Qui qui jan.
To hide - -	Catann - -	Caso tawe.
To cover - -	Acquahoun -	A co na oune.
To believe -	Taboitam -	Tai boitam.
To sleep - -	Nepan - -	Ni pann.
To dispute -	Ke ko mi towock	Ki quaidiwine.
To dance - -	Nemaytow -	Nimic.
To give - -	Mith - -	Mih.
To do - -	Ogitann - -	O-gitoune.
To eat - -	Wissinee - -	Wissiniwin.
To die - -	Nepew - -	Ni po wen.
To forget - -	Winnekiskisew -	Woi ni mi kaw.
To speak - -	Athimetakcousé -	Aninntagoussé.
To cry (tears) -	Mantow - -	Ma wi.
To laugh - -	Papew - -	Pa-pe.
To set down -	Nematappe -	Na matape win.
To walk - -	Pimoutais - -	Pemoussai.
To fall - -	Packisin - -	Panguishin.
To work - -	Ah tus kew -	Anokeh.
To kill - -	Nipahaw - -	Nishi-woes.
To sell - -	Attawoin - -	Ata wois.
To live - -	Pimatise - -	Pematis.
To see - -	Wabam - -	Wab.
To come - -	Astamoteh -	Pitta-si-mouss.
Enough - -	Egothigog - -	Mi mi nac.
Cry (tears) -	Manteau - -	Ambai ma wita.
It hails - -	Shisiagan - -	Sai saigaun.
There is - / There is some }	Aya wa - -	Aya wan.
It rains - -	Quimiwoin -	Qui mi woin.

 After

	Kniſteneaux.	Algonquin.
After to-morrow	Awis wabank	Awes wabang.
To-day	Anoutch	Non gum.
Thereaway	Netoi	Awoité.
Much	Michett	Ni bi wa.
Preſently	Pichiſqua	Pitchinac.
Make, heart	Quithipeh	Wai we be.
This morning	Shebas	Shai bas.
This night	Tibiſcag	De bi cong.
Above	Eſpiming	O kitchiai.
Below	Tabaſſiſh	Ana mai.
Truly	Taboiy	Ne da wache.
Already	Saſhay	Sha ſhaye.
Yet, more	Minah	Mina wa.
Yeſterday	Tacouſhick	Pitchinago.
Far	Wathow	Waſſa.
Near	Quiſhiwoac	Paiſhou.
Never	Nima wecatch	Ka wi ka.
No	Nima	Ka wine.
Yes	Ah	In.
By-and-bye	Pa-nima	Pa-nima.
Always	Ka-ki-kee	Ka qui nick.
Make haſte	Quethepeh	Niguim.
Its long ſince	Mewaiſha	Mon wiſha.

Some Account of the Chepewyan Indians.

THEY are a numerous people, who conſider the country between the parallels of latitude 60. and 65. North, and longitude 100. to 110. Weſt, as

as their lands or home. They ſpeak a copious language, which is very difficult to be attained, and furniſhes dialects to the various emigrant tribes which inhabit the following immenſe track of country, whoſe boundary I ſhall deſcribe *. It begins at Churchill, and runs along the line of ſeparation between them and the Kniſteneaux, up the Miſſinipi to the Iſle à la Croſſe, paſſing on through the Buffalo Lake, River Lake, and Portage la Loche: from thence it proceeds by the Elk River to the Lake of the Hills, and goes directly Weſt to the Peace-River; and up that river to its ſource and tributary waters; from whence it proceeds to the waters of the river Columbia; and follows that river to latitude 52. 24. North, and longitude 122. 54. Weſt, where the Chepewyans have the Atnah or Chin nation for their neighbours. It then takes a line due Weſt to the ſea-coaſt, within which, the country is poſſeſſed by a people who ſpeak their language †, and are conſequently deſcended from them: there can be no doubt, therefore, of their progreſs being to the Eaſtward. A tribe of them is even known at the upper eſtabliſhments on the Saſkatchiwine; and I do not

* Thoſe of them who come to trade with us, do not exceed eight hundred men, and have a ſmattering of the Kniſteneaux tongue, in which they carry on their dealings with us.

† The coaſt is inhabited on the North-Weſt by the Eſkimaux, and on the Pacific Ocean by a people different from both.

pretend

pretend to ascertain how far they may follow the Rocky Mountains to the East.

It is not possible to form any just estimate of their numbers, but it is apparent, nevertheless, that they are by no means proportionate to the vast extent of their territories, which may, in some degree, be attributed to the ravages of the small pox, which are, more or less, evident throughout this part of the continent.

The notion which these people entertain of the creation, is of a very singular nature. They believe that, at the first, the globe was one vast and entire ocean, inhabited by no living creature, except a mighty bird, whose eyes were fire, whose glances were lightning, and the clapping of whose wings were thunder. On his descent to the ocean, and touching it, the earth instantly arose, and remained on the surface of the waters. This omnipotent bird then called forth all the variety of animals from the earth, except the Chepewyans, who were produced from a dog; and this circumstance occasions their aversion to the flesh of that animal, as well as the people who eat it. This extraordinary tradition proceeds to relate, that the great bird, having finished his work, made an arrow, which was to be preserved with great care, and to remain untouched; but that the Chepewyans were so devoid of understanding, as to carry it away; and the sacrilege so enraged the great bird, that he has never since appeared.

They

They have alſo a tradition amongſt them, that they originally came from another country, inhabited by very wicked people, and had traverſed a great lake, which was narrow, ſhallow, and full of iſlands, where they had ſuffered great miſery, it being always winter, with ice and deep ſnow. At the Copper-Mine River, where they made the firſt land, the ground was covered with copper, over which a body of earth had ſince been collected, to the depth of a man's height. They believe, alſo, that in ancient times their anceſtors lived till their feet were worn out with walking, and their throats with eating. They deſcribe a deluge, when the waters ſpread over the whole earth, except the higheſt mountains, on the tops of which they preſerved themſelves.

They believe, that immediately after their death, they paſs into another world, where they arrive at a large river, on which they embark in a ſtone canoe, and that a gentle current bears them on to an extenſive lake, in the centre of which is a moſt beautiful iſland; and that, in the view of this delightful abode, they receive that judgment for their conduct during life, which terminates their final ſtate and unalterable allotment. If their good actions are declared to predominate, they are landed upon the iſland, where there is to be no end to their happineſs; which, however, according to their notions, conſiſts in an eternal enjoyment of ſenſual pleaſure,

pleaſure, and carnal gratification. But if their bad actions weigh down the balance, the ſtone canoe ſinks at once, and leaves them up to their chins in the water, to behold and regret the reward enjoyed by the good, and eternally ſtruggling, but with unavailing endeavours, to reach the bliſsful iſland, from which they are excluded for ever.

They have ſome faint notions of the transmigration of the ſoul; ſo that if a child be born with teeth, they inſtantly imagine, from its premature appearance, that it bears a reſemblance to ſome perſon who had lived to an advanced period, and that he has aſſumed a renovated life, with theſe extraordinary tokens of maturity.

The Chepewyans are ſober, timorous, and vagrant, with a ſelfiſh diſpoſition which has ſometimes created ſuſpicions of their integrity. Their ſtature has nothing remarkable in it; but though they are ſeldom corpulent, they are ſometimes robuſt. Their complexion is ſwarthy; their features coarſe, and their hair lank, but not always of a dingy black; nor have they univerſally the piercing eye, which generally animates the Indian countenance. The women have a more agreeable aſpect than the men, but their gait is awkward, which proceeds from their being accuſtomed, nine months in the year, to travel on ſnow-ſhoes and drag ſledges of a weight from two to four hundred pounds. They are very ſubmiſſive to their huſ-

bands, who have, however, their fits of jealoufy; and, for very trifling caufes, treat them with fuch cruelty as fometimes to occafion their death. They are frequently objects of traffic; and the father poffeffes the right of difpofing of his daughter*. The men in general extract their beards, though fome of them are feen to prefer a bufhy, black beard, to a fmooth chin. They cut their hair in various forms, or leave it in a long, natural flow, according as their caprice or fancy fuggefts. The women always wear it in great length, and fome of them are very attentive to its arrangement. If they at any time appear defpoiled of their treffes, it is to be efteemed a proof of the hufband's jealoufy, and is confidered as a feverer punifhment than manual correction. Both fexes have blue or black bars, or from one to four ftraight lines on their cheeks or forehead, to diftinguifh the tribe to which they belong, Thefe marks are either tatooed, or made by drawing a thread, dipped in the neceffary colour, beneath the fkin.

There are no people more attentive to the comforts of their drefs, or lefs anxious refpecting its exterior appearance. In the winter it is compofed of the fkins of deer, and their fawns, and dreffed as fine as any chamois leather, in the hair. In the fummer their apparel is the fame, except that it is

* They do not, however, fell them as flaves, but as companions to thofe who are fuppofed to live more comfortably than themfelves.

prepared without the hair. Their ſhoes and leggins are ſewn together, the latter reaching upwards to the middle, and being ſupported by a belt, under which a ſmall piece of leather is drawn to cover the private parts, the ends of which fall down both before and behind. In the ſhoes they put the hair of the mooſe or rein-deer with additional pieces of leather as ſocks. The ſhirt or coat, when girted round the waiſt, reaches to the middle of the thigh, and the mittens are ſewed to the ſleeves, or are ſuſpended by ſtrings from the ſhoulders. A ruff or tippet ſurrounds the neck, and the ſkin of the head of the deer forms a curious kind of cap. A robe, made of ſeveral deer or fawn ſkins ſewed together, covers the whole. This dreſs is worn ſingle or double, but always in the winter, with the hair within and without. Thus arrayed, a Chepewyan will lay himſelf down on the ice in the middle of a lake, and repoſe in comfort; though he will ſometimes find a difficulty in the morning to diſencumber himſelf from the ſnow drifted on him during the night. If in his paſſage he ſhould be in want of proviſion, he cuts an hole in the ice, when he ſeldom fails of taking ſome trout or pike, whoſe eyes he inſtantly ſcoops out, and eats as a great delicacy; but if they ſhould not be ſufficient to ſatisfy his appetite, he will, in this neceſſity make his meal of the fiſh in its raw ſtate; but, thoſe whom I ſaw, preferred to dreſs their

victuals

victuals when circumstances admitted the necessary preparation. When they are in that part of their country which does not produce a sufficient quantity of wood for fuel, they are reduced to the same exigency, though they generally dry their meat in the sun.*

The dress of the women differs from that of the men. Their leggins are tied below the knee; and their coat or shift is wide, hanging down to the ancle, and is tucked up at pleasure by means of a belt, which is fastened round the waist. Those who have children have these garments made very

* The provision called Pemican, on which the Chepewyans, as well as the other savages of this country, chiefly subsist in their journies, is prepared in the following manner. The lean parts of the flesh of the larger animals are cut in thin slices, and are placed on a wooden grate over a slow fire, or exposed to the sun, and sometimes to the frost. These operations dry it, and in that state it is pounded between two stones: it will then keep with care for several years. If, however, it is kept in large quantities, it is disposed to ferment in the spring of the year when it must be exposed to the air, or it will soon decay. The inside fat, and that of the rump, which is much thicker in these wild than our domestic animals, is melted down and mixed, in a boiling state, with the pounded meat, in equal proportions: it is then put in baskets or bags for the convenience of carrying it. Thus it becomes a nutritious food, and is eaten, without any further preparation, or the addition of spice, salt, or any vegetable or farinaceous substance. A little time reconciles it to the palate. There is another sort made with the addition of marrow and dried berries, which is of a superior quality.

full about the ſhoulders, as when they are travelling they carry their infants upon their backs, next their ſkin, in which ſituation they are perfectly comfortable and in a poſition convenient to be ſuckled. Nor do they diſcontinue to give their milk to them till they have another child. Child-birth is not the object of that tender care and ſerious attention among the ſavages as it is among civiliſed people. At this period no part of their uſual occupation is omitted, and this continual and regular exerciſe muſt contribute to the welfare of the mother, both in the progreſs of parturition and in the moment of delivery. The women have a ſingular cuſtom of cutting off a ſmall piece of the navel-string of the new-born children, and hang it about their necks: they are alſo curious in the covering they make for it, which they decorate with porcupine's quills and beads.

Though the women are as much in the power of the men, as any other articles of their property, they are always conſulted, and poſſeſs a very conſiderable influence in the traffic with Europeans, and other important concerns.

Plurality of wives is common among them, and the ceremony of marriage is of a very ſimple nature. The girls are betrothed at very early period to thoſe whom the parents think the beſt able to ſupport them: nor is the inclination of the woman conſidered. Whenever a ſeparation takes place,

which

which ſometimes happens, it depends entirely on the will and pleaſure of the huſband. In common with the other Indians of this country, they have a cuſtom reſpecting the periodical ſtate of a woman, which is rigorouſly obſerved: at that time ſhe muſt ſeclude herſelf from ſociety. They are not even allowed in that ſituation to keep the ſame path as the men, when travelling: and it is conſidered a great breach of decency for a woman ſo circumſtanced to touch any utenſils of manly occupation. Such a circumſtance is ſuppoſed to defile them, ſo that their ſubſequent uſe would be followed by certain miſchief or misfortune. There are particular ſkins which the women never touch, as of the bear and wolf; and thoſe animals the men are ſeldom known to kill.

They are not remarkable for their activity as hunters, which is owing to the eaſe with which they ſnare deer and ſpear fiſh: and theſe occupations are not beyond the ſtrength of their old men, women, and boys: ſo that they participate in thoſe laborious occupations, which among their neighbours, are confined to the women. They make war on the Eſquimaux, who cannot reſiſt their ſuperior numbers, and put them to death, as it is a principle with them never to make priſoners. At the ſame time they tamely ſubmit to the Kniſteneaux, who are not ſo numerous as themſelves, when they treat them as enemies.

They

They do not affect that cold reſerve at meeting, either among themſelves or ſtrangers, which is common with the Kniſteneaux, but communicate mutually, and at once, all the information of which they are poſſeſſed. Nor are they rouſed like them from an apparent torpor to a ſtate of great activity. They are conſequently more uniform in this reſpect, though they are of a very perſevering diſpoſition when their intereſt is concerned.

As theſe people are not addicted to ſpirituous liquors, they have a regular and uninterrupted uſe of their underſtanding, which is always directed to the advancement of their own intereſt; and this diſpoſition, as may be readily imagined, ſometimes occaſions them to be charged with fraudulent habits. They will ſubmit with patience to the ſevereſt treatment, when they are conſcious that they deſerve it, but will never forget or forgive any wanton or unneceſſary rigour. A moderate conduct I never found to fail, nor do I heſitate to repreſent them, altogether, as the moſt peaceable tribe of Indians known in North America.

There are conjurers and high-prieſts, but I was not preſent at any of their ceremonies; though they certainly operate in an extraordinary manner on the imaginations of the people in the cure of diſorders. Their principal maladies are, rheumatic pains, the flux and conſumption. The venereal complaint is very common; but though its progreſs

is

is ſlow, it gradually undermines the conſtitution, and brings on premature decay. They have recourſe to ſuperſtition for their cure, and charms are their only remedies, except the bark of the willow, which being burned and reduced to powder, is ſtrewed upon green wounds and ulcers, and places contrived for promoting perſpiration. Of the uſe of ſimples and plants they have no knowledge; nor can it be expected, as their country does not produce them.

Though they have enjoyed ſo long an intercourſe with Europeans, their country is ſo barren, as not to be capable of producing the ordinary neceſſaries naturally introduced by ſuch a communication; and they continue, in a great meaſure, their own inconvenient and awkward modes of taking their game and preparing it when taken. Sometimes they drive the deer into the ſmall lakes, where they ſpear them, or force them into incloſures, where the bow and arrow are employed againſt them. Theſe animals are alſo taken in ſnares made of ſkin. In the former inſtance the game is divided among thoſe who have been engaged in the purſuit of it. In the latter it is conſidered as private property; nevertheleſs, any unſucceſsful hunter paſſing by, may take a deer ſo caught, leaving the head, ſkin, and ſaddle for the owner. Thus, though they have no regular government, as every man is lord in his own family, they are influenced, more or leſs, by cer-

tain

tain principles which conduce to their general benefit.

In their quarrels with each other, they very rarely proceed to a greater degree of violence than is occaſioned by blows, wreſtling, and pulling of the hair, while their abuſive language conſiſts in applying the name of the moſt offenſive animal to the object of their diſpleaſure, and adding the term ugly, and chiay, or ſtill-born.*

Their arms and domeſtic apparatus, in addition to the articles procured from Europeans, are ſpears, bows, and arrows, fiſhing-nets, and lines made of green deer-ſkin thongs. They have alſo nets for taking the beaver as he endeavours to eſcape from his lodge when it is broken open. It is ſet in a particular manner for the purpoſe, and a man is employed to watch the moment when he enters the ſnare, or he would ſoon cut his way through it. He is then thrown upon the ice, where he remains as if he had no life in him.

The ſnow-ſhoes are of very ſuperior workmanſhip. The inner part of their frame is ſtraight, the outer one is curved, and it is pointed at both ends, with that in front turned up. They are alſo laced with great neatneſs with thongs made of deer ſkin. The ſledges are formed of thin ſlips of board turned up alſo in front, and are highly poliſhed with crooked knives, in order to

* This name is alſo applicable to the fœtus of an animal, when killed, which is conſidered as one of the greateſt delicacies.

ſlide

ſlide along with facility. Cloſe-grained wood is, on that account, the beſt; but theirs are made of the red or ſwamp ſpruce-fir tree.

The country, which theſe people claim as their land, has a very ſmall quantity of earth, and produces little or no wood or herbage. Its chief vegetable ſubſtance is the moſs, on which the deer feed; and a kind of rock moſs, which, in times of ſcarcity, preſerves the lives of the natives. When boiled in water, it diſſolves into a clammy, glutinous, ſubſtance, that affords a very ſufficient nouriſhment. But, notwithſtanding the barren ſtate of their country, with proper care and economy, theſe people might live in great comfort, for the lakes abound with fiſh, and the hills are covered with deer. Though, of all the Indian people of this continent they are conſidered as the moſt provident, they ſuffer ſeverely at certain ſeaſons, and particularly in the dead of winter, when they are under the neceſſity of retiring to their ſcanty, ſtinted woods. To the Weſtward of them the muſk-ox may be found, but they have no dependence on it as an article of ſuſtenance. There are alſo large hares, a few white wolves, peculiar to their country, and ſeveral kinds of foxes, with white and grey partridges, &c. The beaver and mooſedeer they do not find till they come within 60. degrees North latitude; and the buffalo is ſtill further South. That animal is known to frequent an higher latitude to the Weſtward of

their country. These people bring pieces of beautiful variegated marble, which are found on the surface of the earth. It is easily worked, bears a fine polish, and hardens with time; it endures heat, and is manufactured into pipes or calumets, as they are very fond of smoking tobacco; a luxury which the Europeans communicated to them.

Their amusements or recreations are but few. Their music is so inharmonious, and their dancing so awkward, that they might be supposed to be ashamed of both, as they very seldom practise either. They also shoot at marks, and play at the games common among them; but in fact they prefer sleeping to either; and the greater part of their time is passed in procuring food, and resting from the toil necessary to obtain it

They are also of a querulous disposition, and are continually making complaints; which they express by a constant repetition of the word *eduiy*, "it is hard," in a whining and plaintive tone of voice.

They are superstitious in the extreme, and almost every action of their lives, however trivial, is more or less influenced by some whimsical notion. I never observed that they had any particular form of religious worship; but as they believe in a good and evil spirit, and a state of future rewards and punishments, they cannot be devoid of religious impressions. At the same time they manifest a decided

cided unwillingneſs to make any communications on the ſubject.

The Chepewyans have been accuſed of abandoning their aged and infirm people to periſh, and of not burying their dead; but theſe are melancholy neceſſities, which proceed from their wandering way of life. They are by no means univerſal, for it is within my knowledge, that a man, rendered helpleſs by the palſy, was carried about for many years, with the greateſt tenderneſs and attention, till he died a natural death. That they ſhould not bury their dead in their own country cannot be imputed to them as a cuſtom ariſing from a ſavage inſenſibility, as they inhabit ſuch high latitudes that the ground never thaws; but it is well known, that when they are in the woods, they cover their dead with trees. Beſides, they manifeſt no common reſpect to the memory of their departed friends, by a long period of mourning, cutting off their hair, and never making uſe of the property of the deceaſed. Nay, they frequently deſtroy or ſacrifice their own, as a token of regret and ſorrow.

If there be any people who, from the barren ſtate of their country, might be ſuppoſed to be cannibals by nature, theſe people, from the difficulty they, at times, experience in procuring food, might be liable to that imputation. But, in all my knowledge of them, I never was acquainted with one inſtance of that diſpoſition; nor among all the natives which

I met with in a route of five thousand miles, did I see or hear of an example of cannibalism, but such as arose from that irresistible necessity, which has been known to impel even the most civilised people to eat each other.

Examples of the Chepewyan Tongues.

Man - - -	Dinnie.
Woman - - -	Chequois.
Young man - -	Quelaquis.
Young woman - -	Quelaquis chequoi.
My son - - -	Zi azay.
My daughter - -	Zi lengay.
My husband - -	Zi dinnie.
My wife - - -	Zi zayunai.
My brother - -	Zi raing.
My father - - -	Zi tah.
My mother - -	Zi nah.
My grandfather - -	Zi unai.
Me or my - - -	See.
I - - - -	Ne.
You - - -	Nun.
They - - -	Be.
Head - - -	Edthie.
Hand - - -	Law.
Leg - - -	Edthen.
Foot - - -	Cuh.
Eyes - - -	Nackhay.
Teeth - - -	Goo.
Side - - -	Kac-hey.
Belly - - -	Bitt.

Tongue	Edthu.
Hair	Thiegah.
Back	Loſſeh.
Blood	Dell.
The Knee	Cha-gutt.
Clothes or Blanket	Etlunay.
Coat	Eeh.
Leggin	Thell.
Shoes	Kinchee.
Robe or Blanket	Thuth.
Sleeves	Bah.
Mittens	Geeſe.
Cap	Sah.
Swan	Kagouce.
Duck	Keth.
Gooſe	Gah.
White partridge	Caſs bah.
Grey partridge	Deyee.
Buffalo	Giddy.
Mooſe deer	Dinyai.
Rein-deer	Edthun.
Beaver	Zah.
Bear	Zaſs.
Otter	Naby-ai.
Martin	Thah.
Wolvereen	Naguiyai.
Wolf	Yeſs (Nouneay.)
Fox	Naguethey.
Hare	Cah.
Dog	Sliengh.
Beaver-ſkin	Zah thith.
Otter-ſkin	Naby-ai thith.
Mooſe-ſkin	Deny-ai thith.
Fat	Icah.
Greaſe	Thleſs.
Meat	Bid.

Pike

Pike	Uldiah.
White-fish	Slouey.
Trout	Slouyzinai.
Pickerel	O'Gah.
Fishhook	Ge-eth.
Fishline	Clulez.
One	Slachy.
Two	Naghur.
Three	Tagh-y.
Four	Dengk-y.
Five	Sasoulachee.
Six	Alki tar-hy-y.
Seven	
Eight	Alki deing-hy.
Nine	Cakina hanoth-na.
Ten	Ca noth na.
Twenty	Na ghur cha noth na.
Fire	Counn.
Water	Toue.
Wood	Dethkin.
Ice	Thun.
Snow	Yath.
Rain	Thinnelsee.
Lake	Touey.
River	Tesse.
Mountain	Zeth.
Stone	Thaih.
Berries	Gui-eh.
Hot	Edowh.
Cold	Edzah.
Island	Nouey.
Gun	Telkithy.
Powder	Telkithy counna.
Knife	Bess.
Axe	Thynle.
Sun, Moon	Sah.

Red

Red	Deli couſe.
Black	Dell zin.
Trade, or barter	Na-houn-ny.
Good	Leyzong.
Not good	Leyzong houlley.
Stinking	Geddey.
Bad, ugly	Slieney.
Long ſince	Galladinna.
Now, to-day	Ganneh.
To-morrow	Gambeh.
By-and-bye, or preſently	Carahoudleh.
Houſe, or lodge	Cooen.
Canoe	Shaluzee.
D[illegible]	The o ball.
Leather-lodge	N'abalay.
Chief	Buchahudry.
Mine	Zidzy.
His	Bedzy.
Yours'	Nuntzy.
Large	Unſhaw.
Small, or little	Chautah.
I love you	Ba ehoinichdinh.
I hate you	Bucnoinichadinh hillay.
I am to be pitied	Eſt-chouneſt-hinay.
My relation	Sy lod, innay.
Give me water	Too hanniltu.
Give me meat	Beds-hanniltu.
Give me fiſh	Sloeeh anneltu.
Give me meat to eat	Bid Barheether.
Give me water to drink	To Barhithen.
Is it far off	Netha uzany.
Is it near	Nilduay uzany.
It is not far	Nitha-hillai.
It is not near	Nilduay.
How many	Etlaneldey.

What

What call you him, or that -	Etla houllia.
Come here - -	Yeu dessay.
Pain, or suffering -	I-yah.
It's hard - -	Eduyah.
You lie - -	Untzee.
What then - -	Edlaw-gueh.

JOURNAL

OF A

VOYAGE, &c.

CHAPTER I.

Embarked at Fort Chepewyan, on the Lake of the Hills, in company with M. Le Roux. Account of the party, provisions, &c. Direction of the course. Enter one of the branches of the Lake. Arrive in the Peace River. Appearance of the land. Navigation of the river. Arrive at the mouth of the Dog River. Successive description of several carrying places. A canoe lost in one of the Falls. Encamp on Point de Roche. Course continued. Set the nets, &c. Arrive at the Slave Lake. The weather extremely cold. Banks of the river described, with its trees, soil, &c. Account of the animal productions, and the fishery of the Lake. Obliged to wait till the moving of the ice. Three families of Indians arrive from Athabasca. Beavers, geese, and swans killed. The nets endangered by ice. Re-imbark and land on a small island. Course continued along the shores, and across the bays of the Lake. Various successes of the hunters. Steer for an island where there was plenty of cranberries and small onions. Kill several rein deer. Land on an island named Isle à la Cache. Clouds of musquitoes.

JUNE 1789.

(Wednes. 3.) WE embarked at nine o'clock in the morning, at Fort Chepewyan, on the South side of the

Lake of the Hills, in latitude 58. 40. North, and longitude 110. 30. Weſt from Greenwich, compaſs ſixteen degrees variation Eaſt, in a canoe made of birch bark. The crew conſiſted of four Canadians, two of whom were attended by their wives, and a German; we were accompanied alſo by an Indian, who had acquired the title of Engliſh Chief, and his two wives, in a ſmall canoe, with two young Indians; his followers in another ſmall canoe. Theſe men were engaged to ſerve us in the twofold capacity of interpreters and hunters. This Indian was one of the followers of the chief who conducted Mr. Hearne to the copper-mine river, and has ſince been a principal leader of his countrymen who were in the habit of carrying furs to Churchill Factory, Hudſon's Bay, and till of late very much attached to the intereſt of that company. Theſe circumſtances procured him the appellation of the Engliſh Chief.

We were alſo accompanied by a canoe that I had equipped for the purpoſe of trade, and given the charge of to M. Le Roux, one of the Company's clerks. In this I was obliged to ſhip part of our proviſion; which, with the clothing neceſſary for us on the voyage, a proper aſſortment of the articles of merchandize as preſents, to enſure us a friendly reception among the Indians, and the ammunition and arms requiſite for defence, as well as a ſupply for our hunters, were more than our own canoe could carry; but by the time we ſhould part company, there was every reaſon to ſuppoſe that our expenditure would make ſufficient room for the whole.

We proceeded twenty-one miles to the Weſt, and then took a courſe of nine miles to North-North-Weſt, when

we

we entered the river, or one of the branches of the lake, of which there are several. We then steered North five miles, when our course changed for two miles to North-East, and here at seven in the evening we landed and pitched our tents. One of the hunters killed a goose, and a couple of ducks; at the same time the canoe was taken out of the water, to be gummed, which necessary business was effectually performed.

(Thursday 4.) We embarked at four this morning, and proceeded North-North-East half a mile, North one mile and a half, West two miles, North-West two miles, West-North-West one mile and a half, North-North-West half a mile, and West-North-West two miles, when this branch loses itself in the Peace River. It is remarkable, that the currents of these various branches of the lake, when the Peace River is high, as in May and August, run into the lake, which in the other months of the year returns its waters to them; whence to this place, the branch is not more than two hundred yards wide, nor less than an hundred and twenty. The banks are rather low, except in one place, where an huge rock rises above them. The low land is covered with wood, such as white birch, pines of different kinds, with the poplar, three kinds of willow, and the liard.

The Peace River is upwards of a mile broad at this spot, and its current is stronger than that of the channel which communicates with the lake. It here, indeed, assumes the name of the *Slave* River.* The course of this day was follows:

* The Slave Indians having been driven from their original country, by their enemies the Knisteneaux, along the borders of this part of the river, it received that title, though it by no

follows :—North-Weſt two miles, North-North-Weſt, through iſlands, ſix miles, North four miles and a half, North by Eaſt two miles, Weſt by North ſix miles, North one mile, North-Eaſt by Eaſt two miles, North one mile. We now deſcended a rapid, and proceeded North-Weſt ſeven miles and a half, North-Weſt nine miles, North by Weſt ſix miles, North-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a half, North-Weſt by North half a mile, North-North-Weſt ſix miles, North one mile, North-Weſt by Weſt four miles, North-North-Eaſt one mile. Here we arrived at the mouth of the Dog River, where we landed, and unloaded our canoes, at half paſt ſeven in the evening, on the Eaſt ſide, and cloſe by the rapids. At this ſtation the river is near two leagues in breadth.

(Friday 5.) At three o'clock in the morning we embarked, but unloaded our canoes at the firſt rapid. When we had reloaded, we entered a ſmall channel, which is formed by the iſlands, and, in about half an hour, we came to the carrying place. It is three hundred and eighty paces in length, and very commodious, except at the further end of it. We found ſome difficulty in reloading at this ſpot, from the large quantity of ice which had not yet thawed. From hence to the next carrying place, called the *Portage d'Embarras*, is about ſix miles, and is occaſioned by the drift wood filling up the ſmall channel, which is one thouſand and twenty paces in length; from hence to the next is one mile and a half, while the diſtance to that which ſucceeds, does not exceed one hundred and fifty yards. It is about the ſame length as the laſt; and from hence to the carrying

means involves the idea of ſervitude, but was given to theſe fugitives as a term of reproach, that denoted more than common ſavageneſs.

place.

places called the Mountain, is about four miles further, when we entered the great River. The smaller one, or the channel affords by far the best passage as it is without hazard of any kind, though I believe a shorter course would be found on the outside of the islands, and without so many carrying places. That called the Mountain is three hundred and thirty-five paces in length; from thence to the next, named the Pelican, there is about a mile of dangerous rapids. The landing is very steep, and close to the fall. The length of this carrying-place is eight hundred and twenty paces.

The whole of the party were now employed in taking the baggage and the canoe up the hill. One of the Indian canoes went down the fall, and was dashed to pieces. The woman who had the management of it, by quitting it in time preserved her life, though she lost the little property it contained.

The course from the place we quitted in the morning is about North-West, and comprehends a distance of fifteen miles. From hence to the next and last carrying place, is about nine miles; in which distance there are three rapids: course North-West by West. The carrying path is very bad, and five hundred and thirty-five paces in length. Our canoes being lightened, passed on the outside of the opposite island, which rendered the carrying of the baggage very short indeed, being not more than the length of a canoe. In the year 1786, five men were drowned, and some packages lost in the rapids on the other side of the river, which occasioned this place to be called the *Portage des Noyés*. They were proceeding to the Slave Lake, in the fall of that year, under the direction of Mr. Cuthbert

Grant.

Grant. We proceeded from hence ſix miles, and encamped on Point de Roche, at half paſt five in the afternoon. The men and Indians were very much fatigued; but the hunters had provided ſeven geeſe, a beaver, and four ducks.

We embarked at half paſt two in the morning, and ſteered North-Weſt by North twenty-one miles, North-Weſt by Weſt five miles, Weſt-North-Weſt four miles, Weſt ſix miles, doubled a point North-North-Eaſt one mile, Eaſt five miles, North two miles, North-Weſt by North one mile and a half, Weſt-North-Weſt three miles, North-Eaſt by Eaſt two miles, doubled a point one mile and a half, Weſt by North nine miles, North-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles, North-North-Weſt five miles; here we landed at ſix o'clock in the evening, unloaded, and encamped. Nets were alſo ſet in a ſmall adjacent river. We had an head wind during the greater part of the day, and the weather was become ſo cold that the Indians were obliged to make uſe of their mittens. In this day's progreſs we killed ſeven geeſe and ſix ducks.

(Sunday 7.) At half paſt three we renewed our voyage, and proceeded Weſt-North-Weſt one mile, round an iſland one mile, North-Weſt two miles and a half, South by Weſt three miles, Weſt-South-Weſt one mile, South-Weſt by South half a mile, North-Weſt three miles, Weſt-North-Weſt three miles and a half, North-Weſt three miles, North-Weſt by North four miles, North two miles and a half, North-Weſt by North two miles. The rain, which had prevailed for ſometime, now came on with ſuch violence, that we were obliged to land and unload, to prevent the goods and baggage from getting wet: the weather, however, ſoon cleared up, ſo that we reloaded the canoe, and got under way.

We-

We now continued our courſe North ten miles, Weſt one mile and a half, and North one mile and a half, when the rain came on again, and rendered it abſolutely neceſſary for us to get on ſhore for the night, at about half paſt three. We had a ſtrong North-North-Eaſt wind throughout the day, which greatly impeded us. M. Le Roux, however, with his party, paſſed on in ſearch of a landing place more agreeable to them. The Indians killed a couple of geeſe, and as many ducks. The rain continued through the remaining part of the day.

(Monday 8.) The night was very boiſterous, and the wind did not ceaſe till two in the afternoon of this day; but as the wind did not abate of its violence, we were prevented from proceeding till the morrow.

(Tueſday 9.) We embarked at half paſt two in the morning, the weather being calm and foggy. Soon after our two young men joined us, whom we had not ſeen for two days; but during their abſence they had killed four beavers and ten geeſe. After a courſe of one mile North-Weſt by North, we obſerved an opening on the right, which we took for a fork of the river, but it proved to be a lake. We returned and ſteered South-Weſt by Weſt one mile and a half, Weſt-South-Weſt one mile and a half, Weſt one mile, when we entered a very ſmall branch of the river on the Eaſt bank, at the mouth of which I was informed there had been a carrying place, owing to the quantity of drift wood, which then filled up the paſſage, but has ſince been carried away. The courſe of this river is meandering, and tends to the North, and in about ten miles falls into the Slave Lake, where we arrived at nine in the morning, when we found a great change in the weather,

as it was become extremely cold. The lake was entirely covered with ice, and did not ſeem in any degree to have given way, but near the ſhore. The gnats and muſkitoes, which were very troubleſome during our paſſage along the river, did not venture to accompany us to this colder region.

The banks of the river both above and below the rapids, were on both ſides covered with the various kinds of wood common to this country; particularly the Weſtern ſide; the land being lower and conſiſting of a rich ſoil. This artificial ground is carried down by the ſtream, and reſts upon drift wood, ſo as to be eight or ten feet deep. The eaſtern banks are more elevated, and the ſoil a yellow clay mixed with gravel; ſo that the trees are neither ſo large or numerous as on the oppoſite ſhore. The ground was not thawed above fourteen inches in depth; notwithſtanding the leaf was at its full growth; while along the lake there was ſcarcely any appearance of verdure.

The Indians informed me, that, at a very ſmall diſtance from either bank of the river, are very extenſive plains, frequented by large herds of buffaloes; while the mooſe and rein-deer keep in the woods that border on it. The beavers, which are in great numbers, build their habitations in the ſmall lakes and rivers, as in the larger ſtreams, the ice carries every thing along with it, during the ſpring. The mud banks in the river are covered with wild fowl; and we this morning killed two ſwans, ten geeſe, and one beaver, without ſuffering the delay of an hour; ſo that we might have ſoon filled the canoe with them, if that had been our object.

From the ſmall river we ſteered Eaſt, along the inſide

of

A Map of
Mackenzie's Track
from
FORT CHIPEWYAN
to the
NORTH SEA,
in 1789.
Deserted Encampment
HARE INDIANS
NATH ANA INDIANS
Great Bear River
Current Slack
MOUNTAIN INDIANS
Great Bear Lake
Current very Strong
INLAND INDIANS
Martin Lake

INLAND INDIANS
BEAVER INDIANS
STRONG BOW INDIANS
GREAT SLAVE LAKE

of a long ſand bank, covered with drift wood and enlivened by a few willows, which ſtretches on as far as the houſes erected by Meſſrs. Grant and Le Roux, in 1786. We often ran aground, as for five ſucceſſive miles the depth of the water no where exceeded three feet. There we found our people, who had arrived early in the morning, and whom we had not ſeen ſince the preceding Sunday. We now unloaded the canoe, and pitched our tents, as there was every appearance that we ſhould be obliged to remain here for ſome time. I then ordered the nets to be ſet, as it was abſolutely neceſſary that the ſtores provided for our future voyage ſhould remain untouched. The fiſh we now caught were carp, poiſſon inconnu, white fiſh, and trout.

(Wedneſ. 10.) It rained during the greateſt part of the preceding night, and the weather did not clear up till the afternoon of this day. This circumſtance had very much weakened the ice, and I ſent two of the Indians on an hunting party to a lake at the diſtance of nine miles, which, they informed me, was frequented by animals of various kinds. Our fiſhery this day was not ſo abundant as it had been on the preceding afternoon.

(Thurſday 11.) The weather was fine and clear with a ſtrong westerly wind. The women were employed in gathering berries of different ſorts, of which there are great plenty; and I accompanied one of my people to a ſmall adjacent iſland, where we picked up ſome dozens of ſwan, geeſe, and duck-eggs; we alſo killed a couple of ducks and a gooſe.

In the evening the Indians returned, without having ſeen any of the larger animals. A ſwan and a grey crane

were the only fruits of their expedition. We caught no other fiſh but a ſmall quantity of pike, which is too common to be a favourite food with the people of the country. The ice moved a little to the eaſtward.

(Friday 12.) The weather continued the ſame as yeſterday, and the muſquitoes began to viſit us in great numbers. The ice moved again in the ſame direction, and I aſcended an hill; but could not perceive that it was broken in the middle of the lake. The hunters killed a gooſe and three ducks.

(Saturday 13.) The weather was cloudy, and the wind changeable till about ſun-ſet, when it ſettled in the north. It drove back the ice which was now very much broken along the ſhore, and covered our nets. One of the hunters who had been at the Slave River the preceding evening, returned with three beavers and fourteen geeſe. He was accompanied by three families of Indians, who left Athabaſca the ſame day as myſelf: they did not bring me any fowl; and they pleaded in excuſe, that they had travelled with ſo much expedition, as to prevent them from procuring ſufficient proviſions for themſelves. By a meridian line, I found the variation of the compaſs to be about twenty degrees eaſt.

(Sunday 14.) The weather was clear and the wind remained in the ſame quarter. The ice was much broken, and driven to the ſide of the lake, ſo that we were apprehenſive for the loſs of our nets, as they could not, at preſent, be extricated. At ſun-ſet there was an appearance of a violent guſt of wind from the ſouthward, as the ſky became on a ſudden, in that quarter, of a very duſky blue colour, and the lightning was very frequent. But inſtead of wind there

[came] on a very heavy rain, which promised to dimi[nish the q]uantity of broken ice.

[(Mon]day 15.) In the morning, the bay still continued [so] full of ice, that we could not get at our nets. [At] noon, the wind veered to the Westward, and not [onl]y uncovered the nets, but cleared a passage to the opposite islands. When we raised the nets we found them very much shattered, and but few fish taken. We now struck our tents, and embarked at sun-set, when we made the traverse, which was about eight miles North-East by North in about two hours. At half past eleven P. M. we landed on a small island and proceeded to gum the canoe. At this time the atmosphere was sufficiently clear to admit of reading or writing without the aid of artificial light. We had not seen a star since the second day after we left Athabasca. About twelve o'clock, the moon made its appearance above the tops of the trees, the lower horn being in a state of eclipse, which continued for about six minutes, in a cloudless sky.

I took soundings three times in the course of the traverse, when I found six fathoms water, with a muddy bottom.

(Tuesday 16.) We were prevented from embarking this morning by a very strong wind from the North, and the vast quantity of floating ice. Some trout were caught with the hook and line, but the net was not so successful. I had an observation which gave 61. 28. North latitude.

The wind becoming moderate, we embarked about one, taking a North-West course, through islands of ten miles, in which we took in a considerable quantity of water.

After making ſeveral traverſes, we landed at five having pitched our tents, the hooks, lines, and n immediately ſet. During the courſe of the was occaſional thunder.

(Wedneſ. 17.) We proceeded, and taking up as we paſſed, we found no more than ſeventeen fiſh, were ſtopped within a mile by the ice. The Indians, however, brought us back to a point where our fiſhery was very ſucceſsful. They proceeded alſo on an hunting party, as well as to diſcover a paſſage among the iſlands; but at three in the afternoon they returned without having ſucceeded in either object. We were, however, in expectation, that, as the wind blew very ſtrong, it would force a paſſage. About ſun-ſet, the weather became overcaſt, with thunder, lightning, and rain.

(Thurſday 18.) The nets were taken up at four this morning with abundance of fiſh, and we ſteered North-Weſt four miles, where the ice again prevented our progreſs. A South-Eaſt wind drove it among the iſlands, in ſuch a manner as to impede our paſſage, and we could perceive at ſome diſtance a-head, that it was but little broken. We now ſet our nets in four fathom water. Two of our hunters had killed a rein-deer and its fawn. They had met with two Indian families, and in the evening, a man belonging to one of them, paid us a viſit: he informed me, that the ice had not ſtirred on the ſide of the iſland oppoſite to us. Theſe people live entirely on fiſh, and were waiting to croſs the lake as ſoon as it ſhould be clear of ice.

(Friday 19.) This morning our nets were unproductive, as they yielded us no more than ſix fiſh, which

were of a very bad kind. In the forenoon, the Indians proceeded to the large island opposite to us; in search of game. The weather was cloudy, and the wind changeable: at the same time, we were pestered by musquitoes, though, in a great measure, surrounded with ice.

(Saturday 20.) We took up our nets, but without any fish. It rained very hard during the night and this morning: nevertheless, M. Le Roux and his people went back to the point which we had quitted on the 18th. I promised to send for them; but as I was watching for a passage through the ice, I did not think it prudent to move till I could obtain it. It rained at intervals till about five o'clock; when we loaded our canoe, and steered for the large island, West six miles. When we came to the point of it, we found a great quantity of ice; we, however, set our nets, and soon caught plenty of fish. In our way thither we met our hunters, but they had taken nothing. I took soundings at an hundred yards from the island, when we were in twenty-one fathom water. Here we found abundance of cranberries and small spring onions. I now dispatched two men for M. Le Roux, and his people.

(Sunday 21.) A Southerly wind blew through the night, and drove the ice to the Northward. The two men whom I had sent to M. Le Roux, returned at eight this morning; they parted with him at a small distance from us, but the wind blew so hard, that he was obliged to put to shore. Having a glimpse of the sun, when it was twelve by my watch, I found the latitude 61. 34. North latitude. At two in the afternoon, M. Le Roux, and his people arrived. At five, the ice being almost all driven past to the North-ward, we accordingly embarked, and steered West fifteen

fifteen miles, through much broken ice, and on the outside of the islands, though it appeared to be very solid to the North-East. I sounded three times in this distance, and found it seventy-five, forty-four, and sixty fathom water. We pitched our tents on one of a cluster of small islands that were within three miles of the main land, which we could not reach in consequence of the ice.

We saw some rein-deer on one of the islands, and our hunters went in pursuit of them, when they killed five large and two small ones, which was easily accomplished, as the animals had no shelter to which they could run for protection. They had, without doubt, crossed the ice to this spot, and the thaw coming on had detained them there, and made them an easy prey to the pursuer. This island was accordingly named Isle de Carrebœuf.

I sat up the whole of this night to observe the setting and rising of the sun. That orb was beneath the horizon four hours twenty-two minutes, and rose North 20. East by compass. It, however, froze so hard that during the sun's disappearance the water was covered with ice half a quarter of an inch thick.

(Monday 22.) We embarked at half past three in the morning, and rounding the outside of the islands, steered North-West thirteen miles along the ice, edging in for the main land, the wind West, then West two miles; but it blew so hard as to oblige us to land on an island at half past nine, from whence we could just distinguish land to the South-East, at the distance of about twelve leagues; though we could not determine, whether it was a conti-

nuation

nuation of the iſlands, or the ſhores of the lake.* I took an obſervation at noon, which gave me 61. 53. North, the variation of the compaſs being at the ſame time, about two points. M. Le Roux's people having provided two bags of *pemican* † to be left in the iſland againſt their return; it was called *Iſle à la Cache.*

The wind being moderated, we proceeded again at half paſt two in the afternoon, and ſteering Weſt by North among the iſlands, made a courſe of eighteen miles. We encamped at eight o'clock on a ſmall iſland, and ſince eight in the morning had not paſſed any ice. Though the weather was far from being warm, we were tormented, and our reſt interrupted, by the hoſt of muſquitoes that accompanied us.

* Sometimes the land looms, ſo that there may be a great deception as to the diſtance: and I think this was the caſe as preſent.

† Fleſh dried in the ſun, and afterwards pounded for the convenience of carriage.

CHAP.

CHAPTER II.

Landed at some lodges of Red-Knife Indians: procure one of them to assist in navigating the bays. Conference with the Indians. Take leave of M. Leroux, and continue the voyage. Different appearances of the land; its vegetable produce. Visit an island where the wood had been felled. Further description of the coast. Plenty of rein and moose-deer, and white partridges. Enter a very deep bay. Interrupted by ice. Very blowing weather. Continue to coast the bay. Arrive at the mouth of a river. Great numbers of fish and wild-fowl. Description of the land on either side. Curious appearance of woods that had been burned. Came in sight of the Horn Mountain. Continue to kill geese and swans, &c. Violent storm.

(Tuesday 23.) TOWARDS morning, the Indians who had not been able to keep up with us the preceding day, now joined us, and brought two swans and a goose. At half past three we re-embarked, and steering West by North a mile and an half, with a Northerly wind, we came to the foot of a traverse across a deep bay, West five miles, which receives a considerable river at the bottom of it; the distance about twelve miles. The North-West side of the bay was covered with many small islands that were surrounded with ice; but the wind driving it a little off the land, we had a clear passage on the inside of them. We steered South-West

South-West nine miles under sail, then North-West nearly, through the islands, forming a course of sixteen miles. We landed on the main land at half past two in the afternoon at three lodges of Red-Knife Indians, so called from their copper knives. They informed us, that there were many more lodges of their friends at not great distance; and one of the Indians set off to fetch them: they also said, that we should see no more of them at present; as the Slave and Beaver Indians, as well as others of the tribe, would not be here till the time that the swans cast their feathers. In the afternoon it rained a torrent.

(Wednes. 24.) M. Le Roux purchased of these Indians upwards of eight packs of good beaver and marten skins; and there were not above twelve of them qualified to kill beaver. The English chief got upwards of an hundred skins on the score of debts due to him, of which he had many outstanding in this country. Forty of them he gave on account of debts due by him since the winters of 1786 and 1787, at the Slave Lake; the rest he exchanged for rum and other necessary articles; and I added a small quantity of that liquor as an encouraging present to him and his young men. I had several consultations with these Copper Indian people, but could obtain no information that was material to our expedition; nor were they acquainted with any part of the river, which was the object of my research, but the mouth of it. In order to save as much time as possible in circumnavigating the bays, I engaged one of the Indians to conduct us; and I accordingly equipped him with various articles of clothing &c. I also purchased a large new canoe, that he might embark with the two young Indians in my service.

This day, at noon, I took an obſervation, which gave me 62. 24. North latitude; the variation of the compaſs being about twenty-ſix or twenty-ſeven degrees to the Eaſt.

In the afternoon I aſſembled the Indians, in order to inform them that I ſhould take my departure on the following day; but that people would remain on the ſpot till their countrymen, whom they had mentioned, ſhould arrive; and that, if they brought a ſufficient quantity of ſkins to make it anſwer, the Canadians would return for more goods, with a view to winter here, and build a fort,* which would be continued as long as they ſhould be found to deſerve it. They aſſured me, that it would be a great encouragement to them to have a ſettlement of ours in their country; and that they ſhould exert themſelves to the utmoſt to kill beaver, as they would then be certain of getting an adequate value for them. Hitherto, they ſaid, the Chepewyans always pillaged them; or, at moſt, gave little or nothing for the fruits of their labour, which had greatly diſcouraged them; and that, in conſequence of this treatment, they had no motive to purſue the beaver, but to obtain a ſufficient quantity of food and raiment.

I now wrote to Meſſrs. Macleod and Mackenzie, and addreſſed my papers to the former, at Athabaſca.

(Thurſday 25.) We left this place at three this morning, our canoe being deeply laden, as we had embarked ſome packages that had come in the canoes of M. Le

* Fort, is the name given to any eſtabliſhment in this country.

Roux.

Roux. We were faluted on our departure with fome vollies of fmall arms, which we returned, and fteered South by Weft ftraight acrofs the bay, which is here no more than two miles and a half broad, but, from the accounts of the natives, it is fifteen leagues in depth, with a much greater breadth in feveral parts, and full of iflands. I founded in the courfe of the traverfe and found fix fathoms with a fandy bottom. Here, the land has a very different appearance from that on which we have been fince we entered the lake. Till we arrived here there was one continued view of high hills and iflands of folid rock, whofe furface was occafionally enlivened with mofs, fhrubs, and a few fcattered trees, of a very ftinted growth from an infufficiency of foil to nourifh them. But, notwithftanding their barren appearance, almoft every part of them produces berries of various kinds, fuch as cranberries, juniper-berries, rafpberries, partridge berries, goofeberries, and the pathagomenan, which is fomething like a rafpberry; it grows on a fmall ftalk about a foot and a half high, in wet, moffy fpots. Thefe fruits are in great abundance, though they are not to be found in the fame places, but in fituations and afpects fuited to their peculiar natures.

The land which borders the lake in this part is loofe and fandy, but is well covered with wood, compofed of trees of a larger growth: it gradually rifes from the fhore, and at fome diftance forms a ridge of high land running along the coaft, thick with wood and a rocky fummit rifing above it.

We fteered South-South-Eaft nine miles, when we were very much interrupted by drifting ice, and with fome

difficulty reached an island, where we landed at seven. I immediately proceeded to the further part of it, in order to discover if there was any probability of our being able to get from thence in the course of the day. It is about five miles in circumference, and I was very much surprized to find that the greater part of the wood with which it was formerly covered, had been cut down within twelve or fifteen years, and that the remaining stumps were become altogether rotten. On making inquiry concerning the cause of this extraordinary circumstance, the English chief informed me, that several winters ago, many of the Slave Indians inhabited the islands that were scattered over the bay, as the surrounding waters abound with fish throughout the year, but that they had been driven away by the Knisteneaux, who continually made war upon them. If an establishment is to be made in this country, it must be in the neighbourhood of this place on account of the wood and the fishery.

At eleven we ventured to re-embark, as the wind had driven the greatest part of the ice past the island, though we still had to encounter some broken pieces of it, which threatened to damage our canoe. We steered South-East from point to point across five bays, twenty-one miles. We took soundings several times, and found from six to ten fathom water. I observed that the country gradually descended inland, and was still better covered with wood than in the higher parts. Wherever we approached the land, we perceived deserted lodges. The hunters killed two swans and a beaver; and at length we landed at eight o'clock in the evening, when we unloaded and gummed our canoe.

(Friday

(Friday 26.) We continued our route at five o'clock, steering South-East for ten miles across two deep bays: then South-South-East, with islands in sight to the Eastward. We then traversed another bay in a course of three miles, then South one mile to a point which we named the Detour, and South-South-West four miles and an half, when there was an heavy swell off the lake. Here I took an observation, when we were in 61. 40. North latitude. We then proceeded South-West four miles, and West-South-West among islands: on one of which our Indians killed two rein-deer, but we lost three hours aft wind in going for them: this course was nine miles. About seven in the evening we were obliged to land for the night, as the wind became too strong from the South-East. We thought we could observe land in this direction when the wind was coming on from some distance. On the other side of the Detour, the land is low, and the shore is flat and dangerous, there being no safe place to land in bad weather, except in the islands which we had just passed. There seemed to be plenty of moose and rein-deer in this country, as we saw their tracks wherever we landed. There were also great numbers of white partridges, which are at this season of a grey colour, like that of the moor-fowl. There was some floating ice in the lake, and the Indians killed a couple of swans.

(Saturday 27.) At three this morning we were in the canoe, after having passed a very restless night from the persecution of the musquitoes. The weather was fine and calm, and our course West-South-West nine miles, when we came to the foot of a traverse, the opposite point in sight bearing South-West, distance twelve miles. The bay is at least eight miles deep, and this course two miles

more

more, in all ten miles. It now became very foggy, and as the bays were so numerous, we landed for two hours, when the weather cleared up; and we took the advantage of steering South thirteen miles, and passed several small bays, when we came to the point of a very deep one, whose extremity was not discernible, the land bearing South from us, at the distance of about ten miles. Our guide not having been here for eight winters, was at a loss what course to take, though as well as he could recollect, this bay appeared to be the entrance of the river. Accordingly, we steered down it, about West-South-West, till we were involved in a field of broken ice. We still could not discover the bottom of the bay, and a fog coming on, made it very difficult for us to get to an island to the South-West, and it was nearly dark when we effected a landing.

(Sunday 28.) At a quarter past three we were again on the water, and as we could perceive no current setting into this bay, we made the best of our way to the point that bore South from us yesterday afternoon. We continued our course South three miles more, South by West seven miles, West fifteen miles, when by observation we were in 61 degrees North latitude; we then proceeded West-North-West two miles. Here we came to the foot of a traverse, the opposite land bearing South-West, distance fourteen miles, when we steered into a deep bay, about a Westerly course; and though we had no land a head in sight, we indulged the hope of finding a passage, which, according to the Indian, would conduct us to the entrance of the river.

Having a strong wind aft, we lost sigth of the Indians, nor could we put on shore to wait for them, without risking

material

material damage to the canoe, till we ran to the bottom of the bay, and were forced among the rushes; when we discovered that there was no passage there. In about two or three hours they joined us, but would not approach our fire, as there was no good ground for an encampment: they emptied their canoe of the water which it had taken in, and continued their route, but did not encamp till sunset. The English chief was very much irritated against the Red-Knife Indian, and even threatened to murder him, for having undertaken to guide us in a course of which he was ignorant; nor had we any reason to be satisfied with him, though he still continued to encourage us, by declaring that he recollected having passed from the river, through the woods, to the place where he had landed. In the blowing weather to-day, we were obliged to make use of our large kettle, to keep our canoe from filling, although we did not carry above three feet sail. The Indians very narrowly escaped.

(Monday 29.) We embarked at four this morning, and steered along the South-West side of the bay. At half past five we reached the extremity of the point, which we doubled, and found it to be the branch or passage that was the object of our search, and occasioned by a very long island, which separates it from the main channel of the river. It is about half a mile across, and not more than six feet in depth; the water appeared to abound in fish, and was covered with fowl, such as swans, geese, and several kinds of ducks, particularly black ducks, that were very numerous, but we could not get within gun shot of them.

The current, though not very strong, set us South-West by West, and we followed this course fourteen miles, till we

we paſſed the point of the long iſland, where the Slave Lake, diſcharges itſelf, and is ten miles in breadth. There is not more than from five to two fathom water, ſo that when the lake is low, it may be preſumed the greateſt part of this channel muſt be dry. The river now turns to the weſtward, becoming gradually narrower for twenty-four miles, till it is not more than half a mile wide; the current, however, is then much ſtronger, and the ſoundings were three fathom and a half. The land on the North ſhore from the lake is low, and covered with trees; that to the South is much higher, and has alſo an abundance of wood. The current is very ſtrong, and the banks are of an equal height on both ſides, conſiſting of a yellow clay, mixed with ſmall ſtones; they are covered with large quantities of burned wood, lying on the ground, and young poplar trees, the have ſprung up ſince the fire that deſtroyed that larger wood. It is a very curious and extraordinary circumſtance, that land covered with ſpruce pine, and white birch, when laid waſte by fire, ſhould ſubſequently produce nothing but poplars, where none of that ſpecies of tree were previouſly to be found.

A ſtiff breeze from the Eaſtward drove us on at a great rate under ſail, in the ſame courſe, though obliged to wind among iſlands. We kept the North channel for about ten miles, whoſe current is much ſtronger than that of the South; ſo that the latter is conſequently the better road to come up. Here the river widened, and the wind dying away, we had recourſe to our paddles. We kept our courſe to the North-Weſt, on the North ſide of the river, which is here much wider, and aſſumes the form of a ſmall lake; we could not, however, diſcover an opening in any direction, ſo that we were at a loſs what courſe to take,

take, as our Red-Knife Indian had never explored beyond our preſent ſituation. He at the ſame time informed us that a river falls in from the North, which takes its riſe in the Horn Mountain, now in ſight, which is the country of the Beaver-Indians; and that he and his relations frequently meet on that river. He alſo added, that there are very extenſive plains on both ſides of it, which abound in buffaloes and mooſe deer.

By keeping this courſe, we got into ſhallows, ſo that we were forced to ſteer to the left, till we recovered deep water, which we followed, till the channel of the river opened on us to the ſouthward. We now made for the ſhore, and encamped ſoon after ſunſet. Our courſe ought to have been Weſt fifteen miles, ſince we took to the paddle, the Horn Mountains bearing from us North-Weſt, and running North-North-Eaſt and South-South-Weſt. Our ſoundings, which were frequent during the courſe of the day, were from three to ſix fathoms water. The hunters killed two geeſe and a ſwan: it appeared, indeed, that great numbers of fowls breed in the iſlands which we had paſſed.

(Tueſday 30.) At four this morning we got under way, the weather being fine and calm. Our courſe was South-Weſt by South thirty-ſix miles. On the South ſide of the river is a ridge of low mountains, running Eaſt and Weſt by compaſs. The Indians picked up a white gooſe, which appeared to have been lately ſhot with an arrow, and was quite freſh. We proceeded South-Weſt by South ſix miles, and then came to a bay on our left, which is full of ſmall iſlands, and appeared to be the entrance of a river from the South. Here the ridge of mountains terminates. This courſe was fifteen miles.

At ſix in the afternoon there was an appearance of bad weather; we landed, therefore, for the night; but before we could pitch our tents, a violent tempeſt came on, with thunder, lightning, and rain, which, however, ſoon ceaſed, but not before we had ſuffered the inconvenience of being drenched by it. The Indians were very much fatigued, having been employed in running after wild fowl, which had lately caſt their feathers; they, however, caught five ſwans, and the ſame number of geeſe. I ſounded ſeveral times in the courſe of the day, and found from four to ſix fathoms water.

CHAP.

CHAPTER II.

Continue our course. The river narrows. Lost the lead. Passed a small river. Violent rain. Land on a small island. Expect to arrive at the rapids. Conceal two bags of pemican in an island. A view of mountains. Pass several encampments of the natives. Arrive among the islands. Ascend an high hill. Violence of the current. Ice seen along the banks of the river. Land at a village of the natives. Their conduct and appearance. Their fabulous stories. The English Chief and Indians discontented. Obtain a new guide. Singular customs of the natives. An account of their dances. Description of their persons, dress, ornaments, buildings, arms for war and hunting, canoes, &c. Passed on among islands. Encamped beneath an hill, and prevented from ascending by the musquitoes. Landed at an encampment. Conduct of the inhabitants. They abound in fabulous accounts of dangers. Land at other encampments. Procure plenty of hares and partridges. Our guide anxious to return. Land and alarm the natives, called the Hare Indians, &. Exchange our guide. State of the weather.

1789 JULY.

(Wednes. 1.) AT half past four in the morning we continued our voyage, and in a short time found the river narrowed to about half a mile. Our course was Westerly among islands, with a strong current. Though the land is high on both sides, the banks are not perpendicular. This course was twenty-one miles; and on found-

ing we found nine fathoms water. We then proceeded Weſt-North-Weſt nine miles, and paſſed a river upon the South-Eaſt ſide; we ſounded and found twelve fathoms; and then we went North-Weſt by Weſt three miles. Here I loſt my lead, which had faſtened at the bottom, with part of the line, the current running ſo ſtrong that we could not clear it with eight paddles, and the ſtrength of the line, which was equal to four paddles. Continued North by Weſt five miles, and ſaw an high mountain, bearing South from us; we then proceeded North-Weſt by North four miles. We now paſſed a ſmall river on the North ſide, then doubled a point to Weſt-South-Weſt. At one o'clock there came on lightning and thunder, with wind and rain, which ceaſed in about half an hour, and left us almoſt deluged with wet, as we did not land. There were great quantities of ice along the banks of the river.

We landed upon a ſmall iſland, where there were the poles of four lodges ſtanding, which we concluded to have belonged to the Kniſtineaux, on their war excurſions, ſix or ſeven years ago. This courſe was fifteen miles Weſt, to where the river of the Mountain falls in from the Southward. It appears to be a very large river, whoſe mouth is half a mile broad. About ſix miles further a ſmall river flows in the ſame direction; and our whole courſe was twenty-four miles. We landed oppoſite to an iſland, the mountains to the Southward being in ſight. As our canoe was deeply laden, and being alſo in daily expectation of coming to the rapids or fall, which we had been taught to conſider with apprehenſion, we concealed two bags of pemican in the oppoſite iſland, in the hope that they would be of future ſervice to us. The Indians were of a different opinion, as they entertained no expectation of returning

that

that ſeaſon, when the hidden proviſions would be ſpoiled. Near us were two Indian encampments of the laſt year. By the manner in which theſe people cut their wood, it appears that they have no iron tools. The current was very ſtrong during the whole of this day's voyage; and in the article of proviſions two ſwans were all that the hunters were able to procure.

(Thurſday 2.) The morning was very foggy; but at half paſt five we embarked; it cleared up, however, at ſeven, when we diſcovered that the water, from being very limpid and clear, was become dark and muddy. This alteration muſt have proceeded from the influx of ſome river to the Southward, but where theſe ſtreams firſt blended their waters the fog had prevented us from obſerving. At nine we perceived a very high mountain a-head, which appeared, on our nearer approach, to be rather a cluſter of mountains, ſtretching as far as our view could reach to the Southward, and whoſe tops were loſt in the clouds. At noon there was lightning, thunder, and rain, and at one, we came abreaſt of the mountains: their ſummits appeared to be barren and rocky, but their declivities were covered with wood: they appeared alſo to be ſprinkled with white ſtones, which gliſtened in the ſun, and were called by the Indians *manetoe aſeniah*, or ſpirit ſtones. I ſuſpected that they were Talc, though they poſſeſſed a more brilliant whiteneſs: on our return, however, theſe appearances were diſſolved, as they were nothing more than patches of ſnow.

Our courſe had been Weſt-South-Weſt thirty miles, and we proceeded with great caution, as we continually expected to approach ſome great rapid or fall. This was ſuch a prevalent idea, that all of us were occaſionally per-

ſuaded

ſuaded that we heard thoſe ſounds which betokened a fall of water. Our courſe changed to Weſt by North, along the mountains, twelve miles, North by Weſt twenty-one miles, and at eight o'clock in the evening we went on ſhore for the night on the North ſide of the river. We ſaw ſeveral encampments of the natives, ſome of which had been erected in the preſent ſpring, and others at ſome former period. The hunters killed only one ſwan and a beaver: the latter was the firſt of its kind which we had ſeen in this river. The Indians complained of the perſeverance with which we puſhed forward, and that they were not accuſtomed to ſuch ſevere fatigue as it occaſioned.

(Friday 3.) The rain was continual through the night, and did not ſubſide till ſeven this morning, when we embarked and ſteered North-North-Weſt for twelve miles, the river being encloſed by high mountains on either ſide. We had a ſtrong head-wind, and the rain was ſo violent as to compel us to land at ten o'clock. According to my reckoning, ſince my laſt obſervation, we had run two hundred and ſeventeen miles Weſt, and forty-four miles North. At a quarter paſt two the rain ſubſided, and we got again under way, our former courſe continuing for five miles. Here a river fell in from the North, and in a ſhort time the current became ſtrong and rapid, running with great rapidity among rocky iſlands, which were the firſt that we had ſeen in this river, and indicated our near approach to rapids and falls. Our preſent courſe was North-Weſt by North ten miles, North-Weſt three miles, Weſt-North-Weſt twelve miles, and North-Weſt three miles, when we encamped at eight in the evening, at the foot of an high hill, on the north ſhore, which in ſome parts roſe perpendicular from the river. I immediately aſcended it'

accompanied

accompanied by two men and some Indians, and in about an hour and an half, with very hard walking, we gained the summit, when I was very much surprized to find it crowned by an encampment. The Indians informed me, that it is the custom of the people who have no arms to choose these elevated spots for the places of their residence, as they can render them inaccessible to their enemies, particularly the Knisteneaux, of whom they are in continual dread. The prospect from this height was not so extensive as we expected, as it was terminated by a circular range of hills, of the same elevation as that on which we stood. The intervals between the hills were covered with small lakes, which were inhabited by great numbers of swans. We saw no trees but the pine and the birch, which were small in size and few in number.

We were obliged to shorten our stay here, from the swarms of musquitoes which attacked us on all sides, and were, indeed, the only inhabitants of the place. We saw several encampments of the natives in the course of the day, but none of them were of this year's establishment. Since four in the afternoon the current had been so strong that it was, at length, in an actual ebullition, and produced an hissing noise like a kettle of water in a moderate state of boiling. The weather was now become extremely cold, which was the more sensibly felt, as it had been very sultry some time before and since we had been in the river.

(Saturday 4.) At five in the morning the wind and weather having undergone no alteration from yesterday, we proceeded North-West by West twenty-two miles, North-West six miles, North-West by North four miles, and West North-West five miles: we then passed the mouth of

of a ſmall river from the North, and after doubling a point, South-Weſt one mile, we paſſed the influx of another river from the South. We then continued our courſe North-North-Weſt, with a mountain a-head, fifteen miles, when the opening of two rivers appeared oppoſite to each other: we then proceeded Weſt four miles, and North-Weſt thirteen miles. At eight in the evening, we encamped on an iſland. The current was as ſtrong through the whole of this day as it had been the preceding afternoon; nevertheleſs, a quantity of ice appeared along the banks of the river. The hunters killed a beaver and a gooſe, the former of which ſunk before they could get to him: beavers, otters, bears, &c. if ſhot dead at once, remain like a bladder, but if there remains enough of life for them to ſtruggle, they ſoon fill with water and go to the bottom.

(Sunday 5.) The ſun ſet laſt night at fifty-three minutes paſt nine, by my watch, and roſe at ſeven minutes before two this morning: we embarked ſoon after, ſteering North-North-Weſt, through iſlands for five miles, and Weſt four miles. The river then encreaſed in breadth, and the current began to ſlacken in a ſmall degree; after the continuation of our courſe, we perceived a ridge of high mountains before us, covered with ſnow, Weſt-South-Weſt ten miles, and at three-quarters paſt ſeven o'clock, we ſaw ſeveral ſmokes on the North ſhore, which we made every exertion to approach. As we drew nearer, we diſcovered the natives running about in great apparent confuſion; ſome were making to the woods, and others hurrying to their canoes. Our hunters landed before us, and addreſſed the few that had not eſcaped, in the Chipewyan language, which, ſo great was their confuſion and terror, they did not appear to underſtand. But when they perceived

ceived that it was impoſſible to avoid us, as we were all landed, they made us ſigns to keep at a diſtance, with which we complied, and not only unloaded our canoe, but pitched our tents, before we made any attempt to approach them. During this interval, the Engliſh chief and his young men were employed in reconciling them to our arrival: and when they had recovered from their alarm of hoſtile intention, it appeared that ſome of them perfectly comprehended the language of our Indians; ſo that they were at length perſuaded, though not without evident ſigns of reluctance and apprehenſion, to come to us. Their reception, however, ſoon diſſipated their fears, and they haſtened to call their fugitive companions from their hiding places.

There were five families, conſiſting of twenty-five or thirty perſons, and of two different tribes, the Slave and Dog-rib Indians. We made them ſmoke, though it was evident they did not know the uſe of tobacco; we likewiſe ſupplied them with grog; but I am diſpoſed to think, that they accepted our civilities rather from fear than inclination. We acquired a more effectual influence over them by the diſtribution of knives, beads, awls, rings, gartering, fire-ſteels, flints, and hatchets; ſo that they became more familiar even than we expected, for we could not keep them out of our tents: though I did not obſerve that they attempted to purloin any thing.

The information which they gave reſpecting the river, had ſo much of the fabulous, that I ſhall not detail it: it will be ſufficient juſt to mention their attempts to perſuade us, that it would require ſeveral winters to get to the ſea, and that old age would come upon us before the period

of our return: we were alſo to encounter monſters of ſuch horrid ſhapes and deſtructive powers as could only exiſt in their wild imaginations. They added, beſides, that there were two impaſſable falls in the river, the firſt of which was about thirty days march from us.

Though I placed no faith in theſe ſtrange relations, they had a very different effect upon our Indians, who were already tired of the voyage. It was their opinion and anxious wiſh, that we ſhould not heſitate to return. They ſaid that, according to the information which they had received, there were very few animals in the country beyond us, and that as we proceeded, the ſcarcity would increaſe, and we ſhould abſolutely periſh from hunger, if no other accident befel us. It was with no ſmall trouble that they were convinced of the folly of theſe reaſonings; and, by my deſire, they induced one of thoſe Indians to accompany us, in conſideration of a ſmall kettle, an axe, a knife, and ſome other articles.

Though it was now three o'clock in the afternoon, the canoe was ordered to be reloaded, and as we were ready to embark our new recruit was deſired to prepare himſelf for his departure, which he would have declined; but as none of his friends would take his place, we may be ſaid, after the delay of an hour, to have compelled him to embark. Previous to his departure a ceremony took place, of which I could not learn the meaning: he cut off a lock of his hair, and having divided it into three parts, he faſtened one of them to the hair on the upper part of his wife's head, blowing on it three times with the utmoſt violence in his power, and uttering certain words. The other two he faſtened with the ſame formalities, on the heads of his two children.

During

During our ſhort ſtay with theſe people, they amuſed us with dancing, which they accompanied with their voices; but neither their ſong or their dance poſſeſſed much variety. The men and women formed a promiſcuous ring. The former have a bone dagger or piece of ſtick between the fingers of the right hand, which they keep extended above the head, in continual motion: the left they ſeldom raiſe ſo high, but work it backwards and forwards in an horizontal direction; while they leap about and throw themſelves into various antic poſtures, to the meaſure of their muſic, always bringing their heels cloſe to each other at every pauſe. The men occaſionally howl in imitation of ſome animal, and he who continues this violent exerciſe for the longeſt period, appears to be conſidered as the beſt performer. The women ſuffer their arms to hang as without the power of motion. They are a meagre, ugly, ill-made people, particularly about the legs, which are very clumſy and covered with ſcabs. The latter circumſtance proceeds probably from their habitually roaſting them before the fire. Many of them appeared to be in a very unhealthy ſtate, which is owing, as I imagine, to their natural filthineſs. They are of a moderate ſtature, and as far as could be diſcovered, through the coat of dirt and greaſe that covers them, are of a fairer complexion than the generality of Indians who are the natives of warmer climates.

Some of them have their hair of a great length; while others ſuffer a long treſs to fall behind, and the reſt is cut ſo ſhort as to expoſe their ears, but no other attention whatever is paid to it. The beards of ſome of the old men were long, and the reſt had them pulled out by the roots, ſo that not an hair could be ſeen on their chins. The men have two double lines, either black or blue, tat-

tooed upon each cheek, from the ear to the nose. The gristle of the latter is perforated so as to admit a goose-quill or a small piece of wood to be passed through the orifice. Their clothing is made of the dressed skins of the rein or moosedeer, though more commonly of the former. These they prepare in the hair for winter, and make shirts of both, which reach to the middle of their thighs. Some of them are decorated with an embroidery of very neat workmanship with porcupine quills and the hair of the moose, coloured red, black, yellow, and white. Their upper garments are sufficiently large to cover the whole body, with a fringe round the bottom, and are used both sleeping and awake. Their leggins come half way up the thigh, and are sewed to their shoes: they are embroidered round the ancle, and upon every seam. The dress of the women is the same as that of the men. The former have no covering on their private parts, except a tassel of leather which dangles from a small cord, as it appears, to keep off the flies, which would otherwise be very troublesome. Whether circumcision be practised among them, I cannot pretend to say, but the appearance of it was general among those whom I saw.

Their ornaments consist of gorgets, bracelets for the arms and wrists, made of wood, horn, or bone, belts, garters, and a kind of band to go round the head, composed of strips of leather of one inch and an half broad, embroidered with porcupine quills, and stuck round with the claws of bears or wild fowl inverted, to which are suspended a few short thongs of the skin of an animal that resembles the ermine, in the form of a tassel. Their cinctures and garters are formed of porcupine quills woven with sinews, in a style of peculiar skill and neatness: they have others of different

different materials, and more ordinary workmanſhip; and to both they attach a long fringe of ſtrings of leather, worked round with with hair of various colours. Their mittens are alſo ſuſpended from the neck in a poſition convenient for the reception of the hands.

Their lodges are of a very ſimple ſtructure: a few poles ſuported by a fork, and forming a ſemicircle at the bottom, with ſome branches or a piece of bark as a covering, conſtitutes the whole of their native architecture. They build two of theſe huts facing each other, and make the fire between them. The furniture harmoniſes with the buildings: they have a few diſhes of wood, bark, or horn; the veſſels in which they cook their victuals, are in the ſhape of a gourd, narrow at the top and wide at the bottom, and of watape*, fabricated in ſuch a manner as to hold water, which is made to boil by putting a ſucceſſion of red-hot ſtones into it. Theſe veſſels contain from two to ſix gallons. They have a number of ſmall leather bags to hold their embroidered work, lines, and nets. They always keep a large quantity of the fibres of willow bark, which they work into thread on their thighs. Their nets are from three to forty fathoms in length, and from thirteen to thirty-ſix meſhes in depth. The ſhort deep ones they ſet in the eddy current of rivers, and the long ones in the lakes. They likewiſe make lines of the ſinews of the rein-deer, and manufacture their hooks from wood, horn, or bone. Their arms and weapons for hunting, are bows and arrows,

* Watape is the name given to the divided roots of the ſpruce-fir, which the natives weave into a degree of compactneſs that renders it capable of containing a fluid. The different parts of the bark canoes are alſo ſewed together with this kind of filament.

ſpears,

ſpears, daggers, and pogamagans, or clubs. The bows are about five or ſix feet in length, and the ſtrings are of ſinews or raw ſkins. The arrows are two feet and an half long, including the barb, which is variouſly formed of bone, horn, flint, iron, or copper, and are winged with three feathers. The pole of the ſpears is about ſix feet in length, and pointed with a barbed bone of ten inches. With this weapon they ſtrike the rein-deer in the water. The daggers are flat and ſharp-pointed, about twelve inches long, and made of horn or bone. The pogamagon is made of the horn of the rein-deer, the branches being all cut off, except that which forms the extremity. This inſtrument is about two feet in length, and is employed to diſpatch their enemies in battle, and ſuch animals as they catch in ſnares placed for that purpoſe. Theſe are about three fathom long, and are made of the green ſkin of the rein or mooſe-deer, but in ſuch ſmall ſtrips, that it requires from ten to thirty ſtrands to make this cord, which is not thicker than a cod-line; and ſtrong enough to reſiſt any animal that can be entangled in it. Snares or nooſes are alſo made of ſinews to take leſſer animals, ſuch as hares and white partridges, which are very numerous. Their axes are manufactured of a piece of brown or grey ſtone from ſix to eight inches long, and two inches thick. The inſide is flat, and the outſide round and tapering to an edge, an inch wide. They are faſtened by the middle with the flat ſide inwards to an handle two feet long, with a cord of green ſkin. This is the tool with which they ſplit their wood, and we believe, the only one of its kind among them. They kindle fire, by ſtriking together a piece of white or yellow pyrites and a flint ſtone, over a piece of touchwood. They are univerſally provided with a ſmall bag containing theſe materials, ſo that they are in a continual ſtate

ſtate of preparation to produce fire. From the adjoining tribes, the Red-Knives and Chepewyans, they procure, in barter for marten ſkins and a few beaver, ſmall pieces of iron, of which they manufacture knives, by fixing them at the end of a ſhort ſtick, and with them and the beaver's teeth, they finiſh all their work. They keep them in a ſheath hanging to their neck, which alſo contains their awls both of iron and horn.

Their canoes are ſmall, pointed at both ends, flat-bottomed and covered in the fore part. They are made of the bark of the birch-tree and fir-wood, but of ſo ſlight a conſtruction, that the man whom one of theſe light veſſels bears on the water, can, in return, carry it over land without any difficulty. It is very ſeldom that more than one perſon embarks in them, nor are they capable of receiving more than two. The paddles are ſix feet long, one half of which is occupied by a blade, of about eight inches wide. Theſe people informed us, that we had paſſed large bodies of Indians who inhabit the mountains on the Eaſt ſide of the river.

At four o'clock in the afternoon we embarked, and our Indian acquaintance promiſed to remain on the bank of the river till the fall, in caſe we ſhould return. Our courſe was Weſt-South-Weſt, and we ſoon paſſed the Great Bear Lake River, which is of a conſiderable depth, and an hundred yards wide: its water is clear, and has the greeniſh hue of the ſea. We had not proceeded more than ſix miles when we were obliged to land for the night, in conſequence of an heavy guſt of wind, accompanied with rain. We encamped beneath a rocky hill, on the top of which, according to the information of our guide, it blew a ſtorm every

day

day throughout the year. He found himſelf very uncomfortable in his new ſituation, and pretended that he was very ill, in order that he might be permitted to return to his relations. To prevent his eſcape, it became neceſſary to keep a ſtrict watch over him during the night.

(Monday 6.) At three o'clock, in a very raw and cloudy morning, we embarked, and ſteered Weſt-South-Weſt four miles, Weſt four miles, Weſt-North-Weſt five miles, Weſt eight miles, Weſt by South ſixteen miles, Weſt twenty-ſeven miles, South-Weſt nine miles, then Weſt ſix miles, and encamped at half-paſt ſeven. We paſſed through numerous iſlands, and had the ridge of ſnowy mountains always in ſight. Our conductor informed us that great numbers of bears, and ſmall white buffaloes, frequent thoſe mountains, which are alſo inhabited by Indians. We encamped in a ſimilar ſituation to that of the preceding evening, beneath another high rocky hill, which I attempted to aſcend, in company with one of the hunters, but before we had got half way to the ſummit, we were almoſt ſuffocated by clouds of muſquitoes, and were obliged to return. I obſerved, however, that the mountains terminated here, and that a river flowed from the Weſtward: I alſo diſcovered a ſtrong ripling current, or rapid, which ran cloſe under a ſteep precipice of the hill.

(Tueſday 7.) We embarked at four in the morning, and croſſed to the oppoſite ſide of the river, in conſequence of the rapid; but we might have ſpared ourſelves this trouble, as there would have been no danger in continuing our courſe, without any circuitous deviation whatever. This circumſtance convinced us of the erroneous account given by the natives of the great and approaching dangers of

of our navigation, as this rapid was ſtated to be one of them. Our courſe was now North-North-Weſt three miles, Weſt-North-Weſt four miles, North-Weſt ten miles, North two miles, when we came to a river that flowed from the Eaſtward. Here we landed at an encampment of four fires, all the inhabitants of which ran off with the utmoſt ſpeed, except an old man and an old woman. Our guide called aloud to the fugitives, and entreated them to ſtay, but without effect: the old man, however, did not heſitate to approach us, and repreſented himſelf as too far advanced in life, and too indifferent about the ſhort time he had to remain in the world, to be very anxious about eſcaping from any danger that threatened him; at the ſame time he pulled his grey hairs from his head by handfulls to diſtribute among us, and implored our favour for himſelf and his relations. Our guide, however, at length removed his fears, and perſuaded him to recall the fugitives, who conſiſted of eighteen people, whom I reconciled to me on their return with preſents of beads, knives, awls, &c. with which they appeared to be greatly delighted. They differed in no reſpect from thoſe whom we had already ſeen; nor were they deficient in hoſpitable attentions; they provided us with fiſh, which was very well boiled, and cheerfully accepted by us. Our guide ſtill ſickened after his home, and was ſo anxious to return thither, that we were under the neceſſity of forcing him to embark.

Theſe people informed us that we were cloſe to another great rapid, and that there were ſeveral lodges of their relations in its vicinity. Four canoes, with a man in each, followed us, to point out the particular channels we ſhould follow for the ſecure paſſage of the rapid. They alſo

abounded in discouraging stories concerning the dangers and difficulties which we were to encounter.

From hence our course was North-North-East two miles, when the river appeared to be enclosed, as it were, with lofty, perpendicular, white rocks, which did not afford us a very agreeable prospect. We now went on shore in order to examine the rapid, but did not perceive any signs of it, though the Indians still continued to magnify its dangers: however, as they ventured down it, in their small canoes, our apprehensions were consequently removed, and we followed them at some distance, but did not find any increase in the rapidity of the current; at length the Indians informed us that we should find no other rapid but that which was now bearing us along. The river at this place is not above three hundred yards in breadth, but on sounding I found fifty fathoms water. At the two rivulets that offer their tributary streams from either side, we found six families, consisting of about thirty-five persons, who gave us an ample quantity of excellent fish, which were, however, confinedtwo hite fish, the poisson inconnu, and another of a round form and greenish colour, which was about fourteen inches in length. We gratified them with a few presents, and continued our voyage. The men, however, followed us in fifteen canoes.

This narrow channel is three miles long, and its course North-North-East. We then steered North three miles, and landed at an encampment of three or more families, containing twenty-two persons, which was situated on the bank of a river, of a considerable appearance, which came from the Eastward. We obtained hares and partridges from these people, and presented in return such articles as greatly

ly delighted them. They very much regretted that they had no goods or merchandize to exchange with us, as they had left them at a lake, from whence the river iſſued, and in whoſe vicinity ſome of their people were employed in ſetting ſnares for rein deer. They engaged to go for their articles of trade, and would wait our return, which we aſſured them would be within two months. There was a youth among them in the capacity of a ſlave, whom our Indians underſtood much better than any of the natives of this country, whom they had yet ſeen : he was invited to accompany us, but took the firſt opportunity to conceal himſelf, and we ſaw him no more.

We now ſteered Weſt five miles, when we again landed, and found two families, containing ſeven people, but had reaſon to believe that there were others hidden in the woods. We received from them two dozen of hares, and they were about to boil two more, which they alſo gave us. We were not ungrateful for their kindneſs, and left them. Our courſe was now North-Weſt four miles, and at nine we landed and pitched our tents, when one of our people killed a grey crane. Our conductor renewed his complaints, not, as he aſſured us, from any apprehenſion of our ill-treatment, but of the Eſquimaux, whom he repreſented as a very wicked and malignant people; who would put us all to death. He added, alſo, that it was but two ſummers ſince a large party of them came up this river, and killed many of his relations. Two Indians followed us from the laſt lodges.

At half paſt two in the morning we embarked, and ſteered a Weſterly courſe, and ſoon after put aſhore at two lodges of nine Indians. We made them a few trifling

 preſents,

presents, but without disembarking, and had proceeded but a small distance from thence, when we observed several smokes beneath an hill, on the North shore, and on our approach we perceived the natives climbing the ascent to gain the woods. The Indians, however, in the two small canoes which were a-head of us, having assured them of our friendly intentions, they returned to their fires, and we disembarked. Several of them were clad in hare-skins, but in every other circumstance they resembled those whom we had already seen. We were, however, informed that they were of a different tribe, called the Hare Indians, as hares and fish are their principal support, from the scarcity of rein-deer and beaver, which are the only animals of the larger kind that frequent this part of the country. They were twenty-five in number; and among them was a woman who was afflicted with an abcess in the belly, and reduced, in consequence, to a mere skeleton: at the same time several old women were singing and howling around her; but whether these noises were to operate as a charm for her cure, or merely to amuse and console her, I do not pretend to determine. A small quantity of our usual presents were received by them with the greatest satisfaction.

Here we made an exchange of our guide, who had become so troublesome that we were obliged to watch him night and day, except when he was upon the water. The man, however, who had agreed to go in his place soon repented of his engagement, and endeavoured to persuade us that some of his relations further down the river, would readily accompany us, and were much better acquainted with the river than himself. But as he had informed us ten minutes before that we should see no more of his tribe,

we

we paid very little attention to his remonſtrances, and compelled him to embark.

In about three hours a man overtook us in a ſmall canoe, and we ſuſpected that his object was to facilitate, in ſome way or other, the eſcape of our conductor. About twelve we alſo obſerved an Indian walking along the North Eaſt ſhore, when the ſmall canoes paddled towards him. We accordingly followed, and found three men, three women, and two children, who had been on an hunting expedition. They had ſome fleſh of the rein-deer, which they offered to us, but it was ſo rotten, as well as offenſive to the ſmell, that we excuſed ourſelves from accepting it. They had alſo their wonderful ſtories of danger and terror, as well as their countrymen, whom we had already ſeen; and we were now informed, that behind the oppoſite iſland there was a Manitoe or ſpirit, in the river, which ſwallowed every perſon that approached it. As it would have employed half a day to have indulged our curioſity in proceeding to examine this phænomenon, we did not deviate from our courſe, but left theſe people with the uſual preſents, and proceeded on our voyage. Our courſe and diſtance this day were Weſt twenty-eight miles, Weſt-North-Weſt twenty-three miles, Weſt-South-Weſt ſix miles, Weſt by North five miles, South-Weſt four miles, and encamped at eight o'clock. A fog prevailed the greater part of the day, with frequent ſhowers of ſmall rain.

CHAP.

CHAPTER IV.

The new guide makes his escape. Compel another to supply his place. Land at an encampment of another tribe of Indians. Account of their manners, dress, weapons, &c. Traffic with them. Description of a beautiful fish. Engage another guide. His curious behaviour. Kill a fox and ground-hog. Land at an encampment of a tribe called the Deguthee Dences, or Quarellers. Saw flax growing wild. The varying character of the river and its banks. Distant mountains. Perplexity from the numerous channels of the river. Determined to proceed. Land where there had been an encampment of the Esquimaux. Saw large flocks of wild fowl. View of the sun at midnight. Description of a place lately deserted by the Indians. Houses of the natives described. Frequent showers. Saw a black fox. The discontents of our hunters renewed, and pacified. Face of the country. Land at a spot lately inhabited. Peculiar circmstances of it. Arrive at the entrance of the lake Proceed to an island. Some account of it.

(Thursday 9.) THUNDER and rain prevailed during the night, and, in the course of it, our guide deserted; we therefore compelled another of these people, very much against his will, to supply the place of his fugitive countryman. We also took away the paddles of one of them who remained behind, that he might not follow us on any scheme of promoting the escape of his companion, who

was

was not eaſily pacified. At length, however, we ſucceeded in the act of conciliation, and at half paſt three quitted our ſtation. In a ſhort time we ſaw a ſmoke on the Eaſt ſhore, and directed our courſe towards it. Our new guide began immediately to call to the people that belonged to it in a particular manner, which we did not comprehend. He informed us that they were not of his tribe, but were a very wicked, malignant people, who would beat us cruelly pull our hair with great violence from our heads, and maltreat us in various other ways.

The men waited our arrival, but the women and children took to the woods. There were but four of theſe people, and previous to our landing, they all harangued us at the ſame moment, and apparently with violent anger and reſentment. Our hunters did not underſtand them, but no ſooner had our guide adreſſed them, than they were appeaſed. I preſented them with beads, awls, etc. and when the women and children returned from the woods, they were gratified with ſimiliar articles. There were fifteen of them; and of a more pleaſing appearance than any which we had hitherto ſeen, as they were healthy, full of fleſh, and clean in their perſons. Their language was ſomewhat different, but I believe chiefly in the accent, for they and our guide converſed intelligibly with each other; and the Engliſh chief clearly comprehended one of them, though he was not himſelf underſtood.

Their arms and utenſils differ but little from thoſe which have been deſcribed in a former chapter. The only iron they have is in ſmall pieces, which ſerve them for knives. They obtain this metal from the Eſquimaux Indians. Their arrows are made of very light wood, and are winged only

only with two feathers; their bows differed from any which we had ſeen, and we underſtood that they were furniſhed by the Eſquimaux, who are their neighbours; they conſiſt of two pieces, with a very ſtrong cord of ſinews along the back, which is tied in ſeveral places, to preſerve its ſhape; when this cord becomes wet, it requires a ſtrong bow-ſtring, and a powerful arm to draw it. The veſſel in which they prepare their food, is made of a thin frame of wood, and of an oblong ſhape; the bottom is fixed in a groove, in the ſame manner as a caſk. Their ſhirts are not cut ſquare at the bottom, but taper to a point, from the belt downwards as low as the knee, both before and behind, with a border, embelliſhed with a ſhort fringe. They uſe alſo another fringe, ſimilar to that which has been already deſcribed, with the addition of the ſtone of a grey farinaceous berry, of the ſize and ſhape of a large barley-corn: it is of a brown colour, and fluted, and being bored is run on each ſtring of the fringe; with this they decorate their ſhirts, by ſewing it in a ſemicircle on the breaſt and back, and croſſing over both ſhoulders; the ſleeves are wide and ſhort, but the mittens ſupply their deficiency, as they are long enough to reach over a part of the ſleeve, and are commodiouſly ſuſpended by a cord from the neck. If their leggins were made with waiſtbands, they might with great propriety be denominated trowſers: they faſten them with a cord round the middle, ſo that they appear to have a ſenſe of decency which their neighbours cannot boaſt. Their ſhoes are ſewed to their leggins, and decorated on every ſeam. One of the men was clad in a ſhirt made of the ſkins of the muſk-rat. The dreſs of the women is the ſame as that of the men, except in their ſhirts, which are longer, and without the finiſhing of a fringe on their breaſt. Their peculiar mode of tying the hair is as follows: — that which

which grows on the temples, or the fore part of the ſkull, is formed into two queues, hanging down before the ears; that of the ſcalp or crown is faſhioned in the ſame manner to the back of the neck, and is then tied with the reſt of the hair, at ſome diſtance from the head. A thin cord is employed for theſe purpoſes, and very neatly worked with hair, artificially coloured. The women, and, indeed, ſome of the men, let their hair hang looſe on their ſhoulders, whether it be long or ſhort.

We purchaſed a couple of very large mooſe ſkins from them, which were very well dreſſed; indeed we did not ſuppoſe that there were any of thoſe animals in the country; and it appears from the accounts of the natives themſelves, that they are very ſcarce. As for the beaver, the exiſtence of ſuch a creature does not ſeem to be known by them. Our people bought ſhirts of them, and many curious articles, &c. They preſented us with a moſt delicious fiſh, which was leſs than an herring, and very beautifully ſpotted with black and yellow: its dorſal fin reached from the head to the tail; in its expanded ſtate it takes a triangular form, and is variegated with the colours that enliven the ſcales: the head is very ſmall, and the mouth is armed with ſharp pointed teeth.

We prevailed on the native, whoſe language was moſt intelligible, to accompany us. He informed us that we ſhould ſleep ten nights more before we arrived at the ſea; that ſeveral of his relations reſided in the immediate vicinity of this part of the river, and that in three nights we ſhould meet with the Eſquimaux, with whom they had formerly made war, but were now in a ſtate of peace and amity. He mentioned the laſt Indians whom we had ſeen

 in

in terms of great derifion; defcribing them as being no better than old women, and as abominable liars; which coincided with the notion we already entertained of them.

As we pufhed off, fome of my men difcharged their fowling pieces, that were only loaded with powder, at the report of which the Indians were very much alarmed, as they had not before heard the difcharge of fire arms. This circumftance had fuch an effect upon our guide, that we had reafon to apprehend he would not fulfil his promife. When, however, he was informed that the noife which he had heard was a fignal of friendfhip, he was perfuaded to embark in his own fmall canoe, though he had been offered a feat in ours.

Two of his companions, whom he reprefented as his brothers, followed us in their canoes; and they amufed us not only with their native fongs, fo enlivened by them, that the antics he performed, in keeping time to the finging, alarmed us with continual apprehenfion that his boat muft upfet: but he was not long content with his confined fituation, and paddling up along-fide our canoe, requefted us to receive him in it, though but a fhort time before he had refolutely refufed to accept our invitation. No fooner had he entered our canoe, than he began to perform an Efquimaux dance, to our no fmall alarm. He was, however, foon prevailed upon to be more tranquil; when he began to difplay various indecencies, according to the cuftoms of the Efquimaux, of which he boafted an intimate acquaintance. On our putting to fhore, in order to leave his canoe, he informed us, that on the oppofite hill the Efquimaux, three winters before, killed his grandfather. We faw a fox, and a ground hog on the hill, the latter of which

which the brother of our guide ſhot with his bow and arrow.

About four in the afternoon we perceived a ſmoke on the Weſt ſhore, when we traverſed and landed. The natives made a moſt terrible uproar, talking with great vociferation, and running about as if they were deprived of their ſenſes, while the greater part of the women, with the children, fled away. Perceiving the diſorder which our appearance occaſioned among theſe people, we had waited ſome time before we quitted the canoe; and I have no doubt, if we had been without people to introduce us, that they would have attempted ſome violence againſt us; for when the Indians ſend away their women and children, it is always with an hoſtile deſign. At length we pacified them with the uſual preſents, but they preferred beads to any of the articles that I offered them; particularly ſuch as were of a blue colour; and one of them even requeſted to exchange a knife which I had given him for a ſmall quantity of thoſe ornamental baubles. I purchaſed of them two ſhirts for my hunters; and at the ſame time they preſented me with ſome arrows, and dried fiſh. This party conſiſted of five families, to the amount, as I ſuppoſe, of forty men, women, and children; but I did not ſee them all, as ſeveral were afraid to venture from their hiding-places. They are called *Deguthee Dinees*, or the *Quarellers*.

Our guide, like his predeceſſors, now manifeſted his wiſh to leave us, and entertained ſimilar apprehenſions that we ſhould not return by this paſſage. He had his alarms alſo reſpecting the Eſquimaux, who might kill us, and take away the women. Our Indians, however, aſſured him that we had no fears of any kind, and that he need not be

alarmed for himſelf. They alſo convinced him that we ſhould return by the way we were going, ſo that he conſented to re-embark without giving us any further trouble; and eight ſmall canoes followed us. Our courſes this day were South-Weſt by Weſt ſix miles, South-Weſt by South thirty miles, South-Weſt three miles, Weſt by South twelve miles, Weſt by North two miles, and we encamped at eight in the evening on the Eaſtern bank of the river.

The Indians whom I found here, informed me, that from the place where I this morning met the firſt of their tribe, the diſtance overland, on the Eaſt ſide, to the ſea, was not long; and that from hence, by proceeding, to the Weſtward, it was ſtill ſhorter. They alſo repreſented the land on both ſides as projecting to a point. Theſe people do not appear to harbour any thieviſh diſpoſitions; at leaſt we did not perceive that they took, or wanted to take, any thing from us by ſtealth or artifice. They enjoyed the amuſements of dancing and jumping in common with thoſe we had already ſeen; and, indeed, theſe exerciſes ſeem to be their favourite diverſions. About mid-day the weather was ſultry, but in the afternoon it became cold. There was a large quantity of wild flax, the growth of the laſt year, laying on the ground, and the new plants were ſprouting up through it. This circumſtance I did not obſerve in any other part.

At four in the morning we embarked, at a ſmall diſtance from the place of our encampment; the river, which here becomes narrower, flows between high rocks; and a meandring courſe took us North-Weſt four miles. At this ſpot the banks became low; indeed, from the firſt rapid, the

country

country does not wear a mountainous appearance; but the banks of the river are generally lofty, in ſome places perfectly naked, and in others well covered with ſmall trees, ſuch as the fir and the birch. We continued our laſt courſe for two miles, with mountains before us, whoſe tops were covered with ſnow.

The land is low on both ſides of the river, except theſe mountains, whoſe baſe is diſtant about ten miles: here the river widens, and runs through various channels, formed by iſlands, ſome of which are without a tree, and little more than banks of mud and ſand; while others are covered with a kind of ſpruce fir, and trees of a larger ſize than we had ſeen for the laſt ten days. Their banks, which are about ſix feet above the ſurface of the water, diſplay a face of ſolid ice, intermixed with veins of black earth and as the heat of the ſun melts the ice, the trees frequently fall into the river.

So various were the channels of the river at this time, that we were at a loſs which to take. Our guide preferred the Eaſternmoſt, on account of the Eſquimaux, but I determined to take the middle channel, as it appeared to be a larger body of water, and running North and South: beſides, as there was a greater chance of ſeeing them I concluded, that we could always go to the Eaſtward, whenever we might prefer it. Our courſe was now Weſt by North ſix miles, North-Weſt by Weſt, the ſnowy mountains being Weſt by South from us, and ſtretching to the Northward as far as we could ſee. According to the information of the Indians, they are part of the chain of mountains which we approached on the third of this month. I obtained an obſervation this day that gave me

me 67. 47. North latitude, which was farther North than I expected, according to the courſe I kept; but the difference was owing to the variation of the compaſs, which was more Eaſterly than I imagined. From hence it was evident that theſe waters emptied themſelves into the Hyperborean Sea; and though it was probable that, from the want of proviſion, we could not return to Athabaſca in the courſe of the ſeaſon, I nevertheleſs, determined to penetrate to the diſcharge of them.

My new conductor being very much diſcouraged and quite tired of his ſituation, uſed his influence to prevent our proceeding. He had never been, he ſaid, at the *Benahulla Toe*, or White Man's Lake; and that when he went to the Eſquimaux Lake, which is at no great diſtance, he paſſed over land from the place where we found him, and to that part where the Eſquimaux paſs the ſummer. In ſhort, my hunters alſo became ſo diſheartened from theſe accounts, and other circumſtances, that I was confident they would have left me, if it had been in their power. I, however, ſatisfied them, in ſome degree, by the aſſurance, that I would proceed onwards but ſeven days more, and if I did not then get to the ſea, I would return. Indeed, the low ſtate of our proviſions, without any other conſideration, formed a very ſufficient ſecurity for the maintenance of my engagement. Our laſt courſe was thirty-two miles, with a ſtronger current than could be expected in ſuch a low country.

We now proceeded North-North-Weſt four miles, North-Weſt three miles, North-Eaſt two miles, North-Weſt by Weſt three miles, and North-Eaſt two miles. At half paſt eight in the evening we landed and pitched

our

our tents, near to where there had been three encampments of the Esquimaux, since the breaking up of the ice. The natives, who followed us yesterday, left us at our station this morning. In the course of the day we saw large flocks of wild fowl.

(Saturday 11.) I sat up all night to observe the sun. At half past twelve I called up one of the men to view a spectacle which he had never before seen; when, on seeing the sun so high, he thought it was a signal to embark, and began to call the rest of his companions, who would scarcely be persuaded by me, that the sun had not descended nearer to the horizon, and that it was now but a short time past midnight.

We reposed, however, till three quarters after three, when we entered the canoe, and steered about North-West, the river taking a very serpentine course. About seven we saw a ridge of high land: at twelve we landed at a spot where we observed that some of the natives had lately been. I counted thirty places where there had been fires; and some of the men who went further, saw as many more. They must have been here for a considerable time, though it does not appear that they had erected any huts. A great number of poles, however, were seen fixed in the river, to which they had attached their nets, and there seemed to be an excellent fishery. One of the fish, of the many which we saw leap out of the water, fell into our canoe; it was about ten inches long and of a round shape. About the places where they had made their fires were scattered pieces of whalebone, and thick burned leather, with parts of the frames of three canoes; we could also observe where they had spilled train oil; and there was the singular appea-

rance

rance of a ſpruce fir, ſtripped of its branches to the top like an Engliſh may-pole. The weather was cloudy, and the air cold and unpleaſant. From this place for about five miles, the river widens, it then flows in a variety of narrow, meandering channels, amongſt low iſlands, enlivened with no trees, but a few dwarf willows.

At four, we landed, where there were thre[illegible] or rather huts, belonging to the natives. The g[illegible]lot is of an oval form, about fifteen feet long, ten f[illegible] in the middle, and eight feet at either end: the wh[illegible] is dug about twelve inches below the ſurface of th[illegible]d, and one half of it is covered over with willow [illegible]; which probably ſerves as a bed for the whole fa[illegible] A ſpace, in the middle of the other part, of about [illegible]t wide, is deepened twelve inches more, and is [illegible]y ſpot in the houſe where a grown perſon can ſtan[illegible]. One ſide of it is covered, as has been already d[illegible] and the other in the hearth or fire-place, of[illegible] however, they do not make much uſe. Though[illegible] cloſe to the wall, the latter did not appear to be [illegible] The door or entrance is in the middle of one en[illegible] houſe, and is about two feet and an half high a[illegible] feet wide, and has a covered way or porch five [illegible] length; ſo that it is abſolutely neceſſary to creep [illegible] fours in order to get into, or out of, this curious [illegible]tion. There is an hole of about eighteen inches [illegible] on the top of it, which ſerves the three-fold purpoſ[illegible] window, an occaſional door, and a chimney. [illegible] under-ground part of the floor is lined with ſplit wood. Six or eight ſtumps of ſmall trees driven into the earth, with the root upwards, on which are laid ſome croſs pieces of timber, ſupport the roof of the building, which

is

is an oblong ſquare of ten feet by ſix. The whole is made of drift-wood covered with branches and dry graſs; over which is laid a foot deep of earth. On each ſide of theſe houſes are a few ſquare holes in the ground of about two feet in depth, which are covered with ſplit wood and earth, except in the middle. Theſe appeared to be contrived for the preſervation of the winter ſtock of proviſions. In and about the houſes we found ſledge runners and bones, pieces of whalebone, and poplar bark cut in circles, which are uſed as corks to buoy the nets, and are fixed to them by pieces of whalebone. Before each hut a great number of ſtumps of trees were fixed in the ground, upon which it appeared that they hung their fiſh to dry.

We now continued our voyage, and encamped at eight o'clock. I calculated our courſe at about North-Weſt, and, allowing for the windings, that we had made fifty-four miles. We expected, throughout the day, to meet with ſome of the natives. On ſeveral of the iſlands we perceived the print of their feet in the ſand, as if they had been there but a few days before, to procure wild fowl. There were frequent ſhowers of rain in the afternoon, and the weather was raw and diſagreeable. We ſaw a black fox; but trees were now become, very rare objects except a few dwarf willows, of not more than three feet in height.

The diſcontents of our hunters were now renewed by the accounts which our guide had been giving of that part of our voyage that was approaching. According to his information, we were to ſee a larger lake on the morrow. Neither he nor his relations, he ſaid,

knew any thing about it, except that part which is opposite to, and not far from, their country. The Esquimaux alone, he added, inhabit its shores, and kill a large fish that is found in it, which is a principal part of their food; this, we presumed, must be the whale. He also mentioned white bears and another large animal which was seen in those parts, but our hunters could not understand the description which he gave of it. He also represented their canoes as being of a large construction, which would commodiously contain four or five families. However, to reconcile the English chief to the necessary continuance in my service, I presented him with one of my capots or travelling coats; at the same time, to satisfy the guide and keep him, if possible, in good humour, I gave him a skin of the moose-deer, which, in his opinion, was a valuable present.

(Sunday 12.) It rained with violence throughout the night, and till two in the morning; the weather continuing very cold. We proceeded on the same meandering course as yesterday, the wind North-North-West, and the country so naked that scarce a shrub was to be seen. At ten in the morning, we landed where there were four huts, exactly the same as those which have been so lately described. The adjacent land is high and covered with short grass and flowers, though the earth was not thawed above four inches from the surface; beneath which was a solid body of ice. This beautiful appearance, however, was strangely contrasted with the ice and snow that are seen in the vallies. The soil, where there is any, is a yellow clay mixed with stones. These huts appear to have been inhabited

inhabited during the laſt winter; and we had reaſon to think, that ſome of the natives had been lately there, as the beach was covered with the track of their feet. Many of the runners and bars of their ſledges were laid together, near the houſes, in a manner that ſeemed to denote the return of the proprietors. There were alſo pieces of netting made of ſinews, and ſome bark of the willow. The thread of the former was plaited, and no ordinary portion of time muſt have been employed in manufacturing ſo great a length of cord. A ſquare ſtone-kettle, with a flat bottom, alſo occupied our attention, which was capable of containing two gallons; and we were puzzled as to the means theſe people muſt have employed to have chiſelled it out of a ſolid rock into its preſent form. To theſe articles may be added, ſmall pieces of flint fixed into handles of wood, which, probably, ſerve as knives; ſeveral wooden diſhes; the ſtern and part of a large canoe; pieces of very thick leather, which we conjectured to be the covering of a canoe; ſeveral bones of large fiſh, and two heads; but we could not determine the animal to which they belonged, though we conjectured that it muſt be the ſea-horſe.

When we had ſatisfied our curioſity we re-embarked, but we were at a loſs what courſe to ſteer, as our guide ſeemed to be as ignorant of this country as ourſelves. Though the current was very ſtrong, we appeared to have come to the entrance of the lake. The ſtream ſet to the Weſt, and we went with it to an high point, at the diſtance of about eight miles, which we conjectured to be an iſland; but, on approaching it, we perceived it to be connected

with the ſhore by a low neck of land. I now took an obſervation which gave 69. 1. North latitude. From the point that has been juſt mentioned, we continued the ſame courſe for the Weſternmoſt point of an high iſland, and the Weſternmoſt land in ſight, at the diſtance of fifteen miles.

The lake was quite open to us to the Weſtward, and out of the channel of the river there was not more than four feet water, and in ſome places the depth did not exceed one foot. From the ſhallowneſs of the water it was impoſſible to coaſt to the Weſtward. At five o'clock we arrived at the iſland, and during the laſt fifteen miles, five feet was the deepeſt water. The lake now appeared to be covered with ice, for about two leagues diſtance, and no land ahead, ſo that we were prevented from proceeding in this direction by the ice, and the ſhallowneſs of the water along the ſhore.

We landed at the boundary of our voyage in this direction, and as ſoon as the tents were pitched I ordered the nets to be ſet, when I proceeded with the Engliſh chief to the higheſt part of the iſland, from which we diſcovered the ſolid ice, extending from the South-Weſt by compaſs to the Eaſtward. As far as the eye could reach to the South-Weſtward, we could dimly perceive a chain of mountains, ſtretching further to the North than the edge of the ice, at the diſtance of upwards of twenty leagues. To the Eaſtward we ſaw many iſlands, and in our progreſs we met with a conſiderable number of white partridges, now become brown. There were alſo flocks of very beautiful plovers, and I found the neſt of one of them with four eggs. White owls, likewiſe, were among the inhabitants of

of the place: but the dead, as well as the living, demanded our attention, for we came to the grave of one of the natives, by which lay a bow, a paddle, and a ſpear. The Indians informed me that they landed on a ſmall iſland, about four leagues from hence, where they had ſeen the tracks of two men, that were quite freſh; they had alſo found a ſecret ſtore of train oil, and ſeveral bones of white bears were ſcattered about the place where it was hid. The wind was now ſo high that it was impracticable for us to viſit the nets.

My people could not, at this time, refrain from expreſſions of real concern, that they were obliged to return without reaching the ſea: indeed the hope of attaining this object encouraged them to bear, without repining, the hardſhips of our unremitting voyage. For ſome time paſt their ſpirits were animated by the expectation that another day would bring them to the *Mer de l'oueſt*: and even in our preſent ſituation they declared their readineſs to follow me wherever I ſhould be pleaſed to lead them. We ſaw ſeveral large white gulls, and other birds, whoſe backs, and upper feathers of the wing, are brown; and whoſe belly, and under feathers of the wing are white.

CHAP.

CHAPTER V.

The baggage removed from the riſing of the water. One of the nets driven away by the wind and current. Whales are ſeen. Go in purſuit of them, but prevented from continuing it by the fog. Proceed to take a view of the ice. Canoe in danger from the ſwell. Examine the iſlands. Deſcribe one of them. Erect a poſt to perpetuate our viſit there. The riſing of the water appears to be the tide. Succeſsful fiſhing. Uncertain weather. Sail among the iſlands. Proceed to a river. Temperature of the air improves. Land on a ſmall iſland, which is a place of ſepulture. Deſcription of it. See a great number of wild fowl. Fine view of the river from the high land. The hunters kill rein-deer. Cranberries, &c. found in great plenty. The appearance and ſtate of the country. Our guide deſerts. Large flight of geeſe: kill many of them. Violent rain. Return up the river. Leave the channels for the main ſtream. Obliged to tow the canoe. Land among the natives. Circumſtances concerning them. Their account of the Eſquimaux Indians. Accompany the natives to their huts. Account of our proviſions.

(Monday 13.) WE had no ſooner retired to reſt laſt night, if I may uſe that expreſſion, in a country where the ſun never ſinks beneath the horizon, than ſome of the people were obliged to riſe and remove the baggage, on

account

account of the riſing of the water. At eight in the morning the weather was fine and calm, which afforded an opportunity to examine the nets, one of which had been driven from its poſition by the wind and current. We caught ſeven poiſſons inconnus, which were unpalatable, a white fiſh, that proved delicious; and another about the ſize of an herring, which none of us had ever ſeen before, except the Engliſh chief, who recognized it as being of a kind that abounds in Hudſon's Bay. About noon the wind blew hard from the Weſtward, when I took an obſervation, which gave 69. 14. North latitude, and the meridian variation of the compaſs was thirty-ſix degrees Eaſtward*.

This afternoon I re-aſcended the hill, but could not diſcover that the ice had been put in motion by the force of the wind. At the ſame time I could juſt diſtinguiſh two ſmall iſlands in the ice, to the North-Weſt by compaſs. I now thought it neceſſary to give a new net to my men to mount, in order to obtain as much proviſion as poſſible from the water, our ſtores being reduced to about five hundred weight, which, without any other ſupply, would not have ſufficed for fifteen people above twelve days. One of the young Indians, however, was ſo fortunate as to find the net that had been miſſing, and which contained three of the poiſſons inconnus.

(Tueſday 14.) It blew very hard from the North-Weſt ſince the preceding evening. Having ſat up till three in the morning, I ſlept longer than uſual; but about eight one

* The longitude has ſince been diſcovered by the dead reckoning to be 135. Weſt.

of

of my men ſaw a great many animals in the water, which he at firſt ſuppoſed to be pieces of ice. About nine, however, I was awakened to reſolve the doubts which had taken place reſpecting this extraordinary appearance. I immediately perceived that they were whales; and having ordered the canoe to be prepared, we embarked in purſuit of them. It was, indeed, a very wild and unreflecting enterpriſe, and it was a very fortunate circumſtance that we failed in our attempt to overtake them, as a ſtroke from the tail of one of theſe enormous fiſh would have daſhed the canoe to pieces. We may, perhaps, have been indebted to the foggy weather for our ſafety; as it prevented us from continuing our purſuit. Our guide informed us that they are the ſame kind of fiſh which are the principal food of the Eſquimaux, and they were frequently ſeen as large as our canoe. The part of them which appeared above the water was altogether white, and they were much larger than the largeſt porpoiſe.

About twelve the fog diſperſed, and being curious to take a view of the ice, I gave orders for the canoe to be got in readineſs. We accordingly embarked, and the Indians followed us. We had not, however, been an hour on the water, when the wind roſe on a ſudden from the North-Eaſt, and obliged us to tack about, and the return of the fog prevented us from aſcertaining our diſtance from the ice; indeed, from this circumſtance, the iſland which we had ſo lately left was but dimly ſeen. Though the wind was cloſe, we ventured to hoiſt the ſail, and from the violence of the ſwell it was only by great exertions that two men could bale out the water from our canoe. We were in a ſtate of actual danger, and felt every correſponding emotion of pleaſure when we reached the land. The Indians had

fortunately

fortunately got more to windward, ſo that the ſwell in ſome meaſure drove them on ſhore, though their canoes were nearly filled with water; and had they been laden, we ſhould have ſeen them no more. As I did not propoſe to ſatisfy my curioſity at the riſk of ſimilar dangers, we continued our courſe along the iſlands, which ſcreened us from the wind. I was now determined to take a more particular examination of the iſlands, in the hope of meeting with parties of the natives, from whom I might be able to obtain ſome intereſting intelligence, though our conductor diſcouraged my expectations by repreſenting them as very ſhy and inacceſſible people. At the ſame time he informed me that we ſhould probably find ſome of them, if we navigated the channel which he had originally recommended us to enter.

At eight we encamped on the Eaſtern end of the iſland, which I had named the Whale Iſland. It is about ſeven leagues in length, Eaſt and Weſt by compaſs; but not more than half a mile in breadth. We ſaw ſeveral red foxes, one of which was killed. There were alſo five or ſix very old huts on the point where we had taken our ſtation. The nets were now ſet, and one of them in five fathom water, the current ſetting Norh-Eaſt by compaſs. This morning I ordered a poſt to be erected cloſe to our tents, on which I engraved the latitude of the place, my own name, the number of perſons which I had with me, and the time we remained there.

(Wedneſ. 15.) Being awakened by ſome caſual circumſtance, at four this morning, I was ſurpriſed on perceiving that the water had flowed under our baggage. As the wind had not changed, and did not blow with greater

violence than when we went to reſt, we were all of opi-nion that this circumſtance proceeded from the tide. We had, indeed, obſerved at the other end of the iſland that the water roſe and fell; but we then imagined that it muſt have been occaſioned by the wind. The water continued to riſe till about ſix, but I could not aſcertain the time with the requiſite preciſion, as the wind then began to blow with great violence; I therefore determined, at all events, to remain here till the next morning, though, as it happened, the ſtate of the wind was ſuch as to render my ſtay here an act of neceſſity. Our nets were not very ſucceſsful, as they preſented us with only eight fiſh. From an obſervation which I obtained at noon, we were in 69. 7. North latitude. As the evening approached, the wind increaſed, and the weather became cold. Two ſwans were the only proviſion which the hunters procured for us.

(Thurſday 16.) The rain did not ceaſe till ſeven this morning, the weather being, at intervals, very cold and un-pleaſant. Such was its inconſtancy, that I could not make an accurate obſervation; but the tide appeared to riſe ſixteen or eighteen inches.

We now embarked, and ſteered under ſail among the iſlands, where I hoped to meet with ſome of the natives, but my expectation was not gratified. Our guide imagi-ned that they were gone to their diſtant haunts, where they fiſh for whales and hunt the rein-deer, that are oppoſite to his country. His relations, he ſaid, ſee them every year, but he did not encourage us to expect that we ſhould find any of them, unleſs it were at a ſmall river that falls into the great one, from the Eaſtward, at a conſiderable diſtance from our immediate ſituation. We accordingly made for the

the river, and ſtemmed the current. At two in the afternoon the water was quite ſhallow in every part of our courſe, and we could always find the bottom with the paddle. At ſeven we landed, encamped, and ſet the nets. Here the Indians killed two geeſe, two cranes, and a white owl. Since we entered the river, we experienced a very agreeable change in the temperature of the air; but this pleaſant circumſtance was not without its inconvenience, as it ſubjected us to the perſecution of the muſquitoes.

(Friday 17.) On taking up the nets, they were found to contain but ſix fiſh. We embarked at four in the morning, and paſſed four encampments, which appeared to have been very lately inhabited. We then landed upon a ſmall round iſland, cloſe to the Eaſtern ſhore, which poſſeſſed ſomewhat of a ſacred character, as the top of it ſeemed to be a place of ſepulture, from the numerous graves which we obſerved there. We found the frame of a ſmall canoe, with various diſhes, troughs, and other utenſils, which had been the living property of thoſe who could now uſe them no more, and form the ordinary accompaniments of their laſt abodes. As no part of the ſkins that muſt have covered the canoe was remaining, we concluded that it had been eaten by wild animals that inhabit, or occaſionally frequent, the iſland. The frame of the canoe, which was entire, was put together with whalebone: it was ſewed in ſome parts, and tied in others. The ſledges were from four to eight feet long; the length of the bars was upwards of two feet; the runners were two inches thick and nine inches deep; the prow was two feet and an half high, and formed of two pieces, ſewed with whalebone; to three other thin ſpars of wood, which were of the ſame height, and fixed in the runners by means of mortiſes, were ſewed

two

two thin broad bars lengthways, at a ſmall diſtance from each other; theſe frames were fixed together with three or four croſs bars, tied faſt upon the runners; and on the lower edge of the latter, ſmall pieces of horn were faſtened by wooden pegs, that they might ſlide with greater facility. They are drawn by ſhafts, which I imagine are fitted to any particular ſledge as they are wanted, as I ſaw no more than one pair of them.

About half paſt one we came oppoſite to the firſt ſpruce-tree that we had ſeen for ſome time: there are but very few of them on the main land, and they are very ſmall; thoſe are larger which are found on the iſlands, where they grow in patches, and cloſe together. It is, indeed, very extraordinary that there ſhould be any wood whatever in a country where the ground never thaws above five inches from the ſurface. We landed at ſeven in the evening. The weather was now very pleaſant, and in the courſe of the day we ſaw great numbers of wild fowl, with their young ones, but they were ſo ſhy that we could not approach them. The Indians were not very ſucceſsful in their foraging party, as they killed only two grey cranes, and a grey gooſe. Two of them were employed on the high land to the Eaſtward, through the greater part of the day, in ſearch of rein-deer, but they could diſcover nothing more than a few tracks of that animal. I alſo aſcended the high land, from whence I had a delightful view of the river, divided into innumerable ſtreams, meandering through iſlands, ſome of which were covered with wood, and others with graſs. The mountains, that formed the oppoſite horizon, were at the diſtance of forty miles. The inland view was neither ſo extenſive nor agreeable, being terminated by a near range of bleak, barren hills, between which

are

are ſmall lakes or ponds, while the ſurrounding country is covered with tufts of moſs, without the ſhade of a ſingle tree. Along the hills is a kind of fence, made with branches, where the natives had ſet ſnares to catch white partridges.

([illegible] 18.) The nets did not produce a ſingle fiſh, and at three o'clock in the morning we took our departure. The weather was fine and clear, and we paſſed ſeveral encampments. As the prints of human feet were very freſh in the ſand, it could not have been long ſince the natives had viſited the ſpot. We now proceeded in the hope of meeting with ſome of them at the river, whither our guide was conducting us with that expectation. We obſerved a great number of trees, in different places, whoſe branches had been lopped off to the tops. They denote the immediate abode of the natives, and probably ſerve for ſignals to direct each other to their reſpective winter quarters. Our hunters, in the courſe of the day killed two rein-deer, which were the only large animals that we had ſeen ſince we had been in this river, and proved a very ſeaſonable ſupply, as our Pemmican had become mouldy for ſome time paſt; though in that ſituation we were under the neceſſity of eating it.

In the vallies and low lands near the river, cranberries are found in great abundance, particularly in favourable aſpects. It is a ſingular circumſtance, that the fruit of two ſucceeding years may be gathered at the ſame time, from the ſame ſhrub. Here was alſo another berry, of a very pale yellow colour, that reſembles a raſpberry, and is of a very agreeable flavour. There is a great variety of other plants and herbs, whoſe names and properties are unknown to me.

The

The weather became cold towards the afternoon, with the appearance of rain, and we landed for the night at ſeven in the evening. The Indians killed eight geeſe. During the greater part of the day I walked with the Engliſh chief, and found it very diſagreeable and fatiguing. Though the country is ſo elevated, it was one continual moraſs, except on the ſummits of ſome barren hills. As I carried my hanger in my hand, I frequently examined if any part of the ground was in a ſtate of thaw, but could never force the blade into it, beyond the depth of ſix or eight inches. The face of the high land, towards the river, is in ſome places rocky, and in others a mixture of ſand and ſtone, veined with a kind of red earth, with which the natives bedaub themſelves.

(Sunday 19.) It rained, and blew hard from the North, till eight in the morning, when we diſcovered that our conductor had eſcaped. I was, indeed, ſurpriſed at his honeſty, as he left the mooſe-ſkin which I had given him for a covering, and went off in his ſhirt, though the weather was very cold. I inquired of the Indians if they had given him any cauſe of offence, or had obſerved any recent diſpoſition in him to deſert us, but they aſſured me that they had not in any inſtance diſpleaſed him: at the ſame time they recollected that he had expreſſed his apprehenſions of being taken away as a ſlave; and his alarms were probably increaſed on the preceding day, when he ſaw them kill the two rein-deer with ſo much readineſs. In the afternoon the weather became fine and clear, when we ſaw large flights of geeſe with their young ones, and the hunters killed twenty-two of them. As they had at this time caſt their feathers, they could not fly. They were of a ſmall kind, and much inferior in ſize to thoſe that frequent the

the vicinity of Athabaſca. At eight, we took our ſtation near an Indian encampment, and, as we had obſerved in ſimilar ſituations, pieces of bone, rein-deer's horn, &c. were ſcattered about it. It alſo appeared, that the natives had been employed here in working wood into arms, utenſils, &c.

(…ay 20.) We embarked at three this morning, when the weather was cloudy, with ſmall r…n and aft wind. About twelve the rain became ſo violent as to compel us to encamp at two in the a…ternoon. We ſaw great numbers of fowl, and … among us fifteen geeſe and four ſwans. Had the weather been more favourable, we ſhould have added conſi…rably to our booty. We now paſſed the river, where we expected to meet ſome of the natives, but diſcovered no ſigns of them. The ground cloſe to the river does not riſe to any conſiderable height, and the hills, which are at a ſmall diſtance, are covered with the ſpruce fir and ſmall birch trees, to their very ſummits.

(Tueſday 21.) We embarked at half paſt one this morning, when the weather was cold and unpleaſant, and the wind South-Weſt. At ten, we left the channels formed by the iſlands for the uninterrupted channel of the river, where we found the current ſo ſtrong, that it was abſolutely neceſſary to tow the canoe with a line. The land on both ſides was elevated, and almoſt perpendicular, and the ſhore beneath it, which is of no great breadth, was covered with a grey ſtone that falls from the precipice. We made much greater expedition with the line, than we could have done with the paddles. The men in the canoe relieved two of thoſe on ſhore every two hours, ſo that it

was

was very hard and fatiguing duty, but it saved a great deal of that time which was so precious to us. At half past eight, we la ded at the same spot where we had alrea encamped o n the ninth instant.

In about a n hour after our arrival, we were joi eleven of the atives, who were stationed furthe river, and there were some among them who we ha seen during our former visit to this place. The brother of our late guide, however, was of th party, and was eager in his inquiries after hi ; but ou account did not prove satisfactory. They all gav evi t tokens of their suspicion, and each of them made a tinct harangue on the occasion. Our Indians, indeed did not understand th eloquence, though they conje tured it to be very u f vourable to our assertions. T brother neverth le proposed to barter his credulity for a small qua tity o beads, and promised to believe eve y thing I should say, i I would gratify him with a few of those baubles: but he did not succeed in his prop tion, and contente mys with giving him the bow and arrows which our conductor had left with us.

My people were now necessarily engaged in putting the fire-arms in order, after th violent rain of the preceding day; an employment which very much attracted the curiosity, and appeared, in some degree to awaken the apprehensions, of the natives, To their inquiries concerning the motives of our preparation, we answered by shewing a piece of meat and a goose, and informing them, that we were preparing our arms to procure similar provisions: at the same time we assured them, though it was our intention to kill any animals we might find, there was no intention to hurt

hurt or injure them. They, however, entreated us not to discharge our pieces in their presence. I requested the [illegible]lish chief to ask them some questions, which they either wer[illegible] or would not understand; so that I failed in obtain-had [illegible] information from them.

[illegible]tensi[illegible]

([illegible]y people went to rest; but I thought it prudent to [illegible]p, in order to watch the motions of the natives. This circumstance was a subject of their inquiry; and their curiosity was still more excited, when they saw me employed in writing. About twelve o'clock I perceived four of their women coming along the shore; and they were no sooner seen by their friends, than they ran hastily to meet [illegible] and persuaded two of them, who, I suppose, were [illegible]g, to return, while they brought the other two who [illegible] very old, to enjoy the warmth of our fire; but, after [illegible]ing there for about half an hour, they also retreated. [illegible]ose who remained, immediately kindled a small fire, and laid themselves down to sleep round it, like so many whelps, having neither skins or garments of any kind to cover them, notwithstanding the cold that prevailed. My people having placed their kettle of meat on the fire, I was obliged to guard it from the natives, who made several attempts to possess themselves of its [illegible] and this was the only instance I had hitherto discovered, of their being influenced by a pilfering disposition. It might, perhaps, be a general opinion, that provisions were a common property. I now saw the sun set for the first time since I had been here before. During the preceding night, the weather was so cloudy, that I could not observe its descent to the horizon. The water had sunk, at this place, upward of three feet since we had passed down the river.

(Wedneſ. 22.) We began our march at half paſt three this morning, the men being employed to tow the canoe. I walked with the Indians to their huts, which were at a greater diſtance than I had any reaſon to expect, for it occupied three hours in hard walking to reach them. We paſſed a narrow and deep river in our way, at the mouth of which the natives had ſet their nets. They had hid their effects, and ſent their young women into the woods, as we ſaw but very few of the former, and none of the latter. They had large huts built with drift wood on the declivity of the beach, and in the inſide the earth was dug away, ſo as to form a level floor. At each end was a ſtout fork, whereon was laid a ſtrong ridge-pole, which formed a ſupport to the whole ſtructure, and a covering of ſpruce bark preſerved it from the rain. Various ſpars of different heights were fixed within the hut, and covered with ſplit fiſh that hung on them to dry; and fires were made in different parts to accelerate the operation. There were rails alſo on the outſide of the building, which were hung around with fiſh, but in a freſher ſtate than thoſe within. The ſpawn is alſo carefully preſerved and dried in the ſame manner. We obtained as many fiſh from them as the canoe could conveniently contain, and ſome ſtrings of beads were the price paid for them, an article which they preferred to every other. Iron they held in little or no eſtimation.

During the two hours that I remained here, I employed the Engliſh chief in a continual ſtate of inquiry concerning theſe people. The information that reſulted from this conference was as follows.

This nation or tribe is very numerous, with whom the

Eſquimaux

Efquimaux had been continually at variance, a people who take every advantage of attacking thofe who are not in a ftate to defend themfelves; and though they had promifed friendfhip, had lately, and in the moft treacherous manner, butchered fome of their people. As a proof of this circumftance, the relations of the deceafed fhewed us, that they had cut off their hair on the occafion. They alfo declared their determination to withdraw all confidence in future from the Efquimaux, and to collect themfelves in a formidable body, that they might be enabled to revenge the death of their friends.

From their account, a ftrong party of Efquimaux occafionally afcends this river, in large canoes, in fearch of flint ftones, which they employ to point their fpears and arrows. They were now at their lake due Eaft from the fpot where we then were, which was at no great diftance over land, where they kill the rein-deer, and where they would foon begin to catch big fifh for the winter ftock. We could not, however, obtain any information refpecting the lake in the direction in which we were. To the Eaftward and Weftward where they faw it, the ice breaks up, but foon freezes again.

The Efquimaux informed them that they faw large canoes full of white men to the Weftward, eight or ten winters ago, from whom they obtained iron in exchange for leather. The lake where they met thefe canoes, is called by them *Belhoullay Toe*, or White Man's Lake. They alfo reprefented the Efquimaux as dreffing like themfelves. They wear their hair fhort, and have two holes perforated, one on each fide of the mouth, in a line with the under lip, in which they place long beads that they

 find

find in the lake. Their bows are ſomewhat different from thoſe uſed by the natives we had ſeen, and they employ ſlings from whence they throw ſtones with ſuch dexterity that they prove very formidable weapons in the day of battle.

We alſo learned in addition from the natives, that we ſhould not ſee any more of their relations, as they had all left the river to go in purſuit of rein-deer for their proviſions, and that they themſelves ſhould engage in a ſimilar expedition in a few days. Rein-deer, bears, wolvereens, martens, foxes, hares, and white buffaloes are the only quadrupeds in their country; and that the latter were only to be found in the mountains to the Weſtward.

We proceeded with the line throughout the day, except two hours, when we employed the ſail. We encamped at eight in the evening. From the place we quitted this morning, the banks of the river are well covered with ſmall wood, ſpruce, firs, birch, and willow. We found it very warm during the whole of our progreſs.

(Thurſday 23.) At five in the morning we proceeded on our voyage, but found it very difficult to travel along the beach. We obſerved ſeveral places where the natives had ſtationed themſelves and ſet their nets ſince our paſſage downwards. We paſſed a ſmall river, and at five o'clock our Indians put to ſhore in order to encamp, but we proceeded onwards, which diſpleaſed them very much, from the fatigue they ſuffered, and at eight we encamped at our poſition of the 8th inſtant. The day was very fine, and we employed the towing line throughout the courſe of it. At ten, our hunters returned, ſullen and diſſatisfied. We

had

had not touched any of our provifion ftores for fix days, in which time we had confumed two rein-deer, four fwans, forty-five geefe, and a confiderable quantity of fifh: but it is to be confidered, that we were ten men, and four women. I have always obferved, that the north men poffeffed very hearty appetites, but they were very much exceeded by thofe with me, fince we entered this river. I fhould really have thought it abfolute gluttony in my people, if my own appetite had not increafed in a fimilar proportion.

CHAPTER VI.

Employ the towing line. Deſcription of a place where the Indians come to collect flint. Their ſhyneſs and ſuſpicions. Current leſſens. Appearance of the country. Abundance of hares. Violent ſtorm. Land near three lodges. Alarm of the Indians. Supply of fiſh from them. Their fabulous accounts. Continue to ſee Indian lodges. Treatment of a diſeaſe. Miſunderſtanding with the natives. The interpreter harangues them. Their accounts ſimilar to thoſe we have already received. Their curious conduct. Purchaſe ſome beaver ſkins. Shoot one of their dogs. The conſequence of that act. Apprehenſions of the women. Large quantities of liquorice. Swallow's neſts ſeen in the precipices. Fall in with a party of natives killing geeſe. Circumſtances concerning them. Hurricane. Variation of the weather. Kill great numbers of geeſe. Abundance of ſeveral kinds of berries. State of the river and its bank.

(Friday 24.) AT five we continued our courſe, but, in a very ſhort time, were under the neceſſity of applying to the aid of the line, the ſtream being ſo ſtrong as to render all our attempts unavailing to ſtem it with the paddles. We paſſed a ſmall river, on each ſide of which the natives and Eſquimaux collect flint. The bank is an high, ſteep, and ſoft rock, variegated with red, green,

and

and yellow hues. From the continual dripping of water, parts of it frequently fall and break into ſmall ſtony flakes like ſlate, but not ſo hard. Among them are found pieces of *Petrolium*, which bears a reſſemblance to yellow wax, but is more friable. The Engliſh chief informed me, that rocks of a ſimilar kind are ſcattered about the country, at the back of the Slave Lake, where the Chepewyans collect copper.

At ten, we had an aft wind, and the men who had been engaged in towing, re-embarked. At twelve we obſerved a lodge on the ſide of the river, and its inhabitants running about in great confuſion, or hurrying to the woods. Three men waited our arrival, though they remained at ſome diſtance from us, with their bows and arrows ready to be employed; or at leaſt, that appeared to be the idea they wiſhed to convey to us, by continually ſnapping the ſtrings of the former, and the ſigns they made to forbid our approach. The Engliſh chief, whoſe language they, in ſome degree, underſtood, endeavoured to remove their diſtruſt of us; but till I went to them with a preſent of beads, they refuſed to have any communication with us.

When they firſt perceived our ſail, they took us for the Eſquimaux Indians, who employ a ſail in their canoes. They were ſuſpicious of our deſigns, and queſtioned us with a view to obtain ſome knowledge of them. On ſeeing us in poſſeſſion of ſome of the clotnes, bows, &c. which muſt have belonged to ſome of the Deguthee Denees, or Quarrellers, they imagined, that we had killed ſome of them, and were bearing away the fruits of our victory. They appeared, indeed, to be of the ſame tribe, though they were afraid of acknowledging it. From their queſtions,

queſtions, it was evident that they had not received any notice of our being in thoſe parts.

They would not acknowledge that they had any women with them, though we had ſeen them running to the woods; but pretended that they had been left at a conſiderable diſtance from the river, with ſome relations, who were engaged in killing rein deer. Theſe people had been here but a ſhort time, and their lodge was not yet completed; nor had they any fiſh in a ſtate of preparation for their proviſion. I gave them a knife and ſome beads for an horn-wedge or chiſel, with which they ſplit their canoe-wood. One of my Indians having broken his paddle, attempted to take one of theirs, which was immediately conteſted by its owner, and on my interfering to prevent this act of injuſtice, he manifeſted his gratitude to me on the occaſion. We loſt an hour and a half in this conference.

The Engliſh chief was during the whole of the time in the woods, where ſome of the hidden property was diſcovered, but the women contrived to elude the ſearch that was made after them. Some of theſe articles were purloined, but I was ignorant of this circumſtance till we had taken our departure, or I ſhould certainly have given an ample remuneration. Our chief expreſſed his diſpleaſure at their running away to conceal themſelves, their property, and their young women, in very bitter terms. He ſaid his heart was ſet againſt thoſe ſlaves; and complained aloud of his diſappointment in coming ſo far without ſeeing the natives, and getting ſomething from them.

We employed the ſail and the paddle ſince ten this morning,

morning, and pitched our tents at ſeven in the evening. We had no ſooner encamped than we were viſited by an Indian whom we had ſeen before, and whoſe family was at a ſmall diſtance up the river: at nine he left us. The weather was clear and ſerene.

(Saturday 25.) We embarked this morning at a quarter paſt three, and at ſeven we paſſed the lodge of the Indian who had viſited us the preceding evening. There appeared to have been more than one family, and we naturally concluded that our viſitor had made ſuch an unfavourable report of us, as to induce his companions to fly on our approach. Their fire was not extinguiſhed, and they had left a conſiderable quantity of fiſh ſcattered about their dwelling.

The weather was now very ſultry; but the current had relaxed of its force, ſo that the paddle was ſufficient for our progreſs during the greateſt part of the day. The inland part of the country is mountainous and the banks of the river low, but covered with wood, among which is the poplar, but of ſmall growth, and the firſt which we had ſeen on our return. A pigeon alſo flew by us, and hares appeared to be in great plenty. We paſſed many Indian encampments which we did not ſee in our paſſage down the river. About ſeven the ſky, to the Weſtward, became of a ſteel-blue colour, with lightning and thunder. We accordingly landed to prepare ourſelves againſt the coming ſtorm; but before we could erect our tents, it came on with ſuch violence, that we expected it to carry every thing before it. The ridge-pole of my tent was broken in the middle, where it was found, and nine inches and an half in circumference; and we were obliged to throw

ourſelves flat on the ground to eſcape being wounded by the ſtones that were hurled about in the air like ſand. The violence of the ſtorm, however, ſubſided in a ſhort time, but left the ſky overcaſt with the appearance of rain.

(Sunday 26.) It rained from the preceding evening to this morning, when we embarked at four o'clock. At eight we landed at three large Indian lodges. Their inhabitants, who were aſleep, expreſſed uncommon alarm and agitation when they were awakened by us, though moſt of them had ſeen us before. Their habitations were crowded with fiſh, hanging to dry in every part; but as we wanted ſome for preſent uſe, we ſent their young men to viſit the nets, and they returned with abundance of large white fiſh, to which the name has been given of *poiſſon inconnu*; ſome of a round ſhape, and green colour; and a few white ones; all which were very agreeable food. Some beads, and a few other trifles, were gratefully received in return. Theſe people are very fond of iron work of any kind, and my men purchaſed ſeveral of their articles for ſmall pieces of tin.

There were five or ſix perſons whom we had not ſeen before; and among them was a Dog-rib Indian, whom ſome private quarrel had driven from his country. The Engliſh chief underſtood him as well as one of his own nation, and gave the following account of their converſation:—

He had been informed by the people with whom he now lives, the Hare Indians, that there is another river on the other ſide of the mountains to the South-Weſt, which

falls

falls into the *Belhoullay Toe*, or White man's Lake, in compariſon of which that on whoſe banks we then were, was but a ſmall ſtream; that the natives were very large, and very wicked, and kill common men with their eyes; that they make canoes larger than ours; that thoſe who inhabit the entrance of it kill a kind of beaver, the ſkin of which is almoſt red; and that large canoes often frequent it. As there is no known communication by water with this river, the natives who ſaw it went over the mountains.

As he mentioned that there were ſome beavers in this part of the country, I told him to hunt it, and deſire the others to do the ſame, as well as the martens, foxes, beaver-eater or wolvereen, &c. which they might carry to barter for iron with his own nation, who are ſupplied with goods by us, near their country. He was anxious to know whether we ſhould return that way: at the ſame time he informed us that we ſhould ſee but few of the natives along the river, as all the young men were engaged in killing rein-deer, near the Eſquimaux Lake, which, he alſo ſaid, was at no great diſtance. The latter he repreſented as very treacherous, and added, that they had killed one of his people. He told us likewiſe that ſome plan of revenge was meditating, unleſs the offending party paid a ſufficient price for the body of the murdered perſon.

My Indians were very anxious to poſſeſs themſelves of a woman that was with the natives, but as they were not willing to part with her, I interfered, to prevent her being taken by force: indeed I was obliged to exerciſe the utmoſt vigilance, as the Indians who accompanied me were ever ready to take what they could from the natives, without

making them any return. About twelve we paſſed a river of ſome appearance, flowing from the Eaſtward. One of the natives who followed us, called it the Winter Road River. We did not find the ſtream ſtrong to-day along the ſhore, as there were many eddy currents: we therefore employed the ſail during ſome hours of it, and went on ſhore for the night at half paſt ſeven.

(Monday 27.) The weather was now fine, and we renewed our voyage at half paſt two. At ſeven we landed where there were three families, ſituated cloſe to the rapids. We found but few people; for as the Indian who followed us yeſterday had arrived here before us, we ſuppoſed that the greater part had fled, on the intelligence which he gave of our approach. Some of theſe people we had ſeen before, when they told us that they had left their property at a lake in the neighbourhood, and had promiſed to fetch it before our return; but we now found them as unprovided as when we left them. They had plenty of fiſh, ſome of which was packed up in birch bark.

During the time we remained with them, which was not more than two hours, I endeavoured to obtain ſome additional intelligence reſpecting the river which had been mentioned on the preceding day, when they declared their total ignorance of it, but from the reports of others, as they had never been beyond the mountains, on the oppoſite ſide of their own river: they had, however, been informed that it was larger than that which waſhed the banks whereon they lived, and that its courſe was towards the mid-day ſun. They added, that there were people at a ſmall diſtance up the river, who inhabited the oppoſite mountains, and had lately deſcended from them to obtain

ſupplies

ſupplies of fiſh. Theſe people, they ſuggeſted, muſt be well acquainted with the other river, which was the object of my inquiry. I engaged one of them, by a bribe of ſome beads, to deſcribe the circumjacent country upon the ſand. This ſingular map he immediately undertook to delineate, and accordingly traced out a very long point of land between the rivers, though without paying the leaſt attention to their courſes, which he repreſented as running into the great lake, at the extremity of which, as he had been told by Indians of other nations, there was a Belhoullay Couin, or White Man's Fort. This I took to be Unalaſcha Fort, and conſequently the river to the Weſt to be Cook's River; and that the body of water or ſea into which this river diſcharges itſelf at Whale Iſland, communicates with Norton Sound. I made an advantageous propoſition to this man to accompany me acroſs the mountains to the other river, but he refuſed it. At the ſame time he recommended me to the people already mentioned, who were fiſhing in the neighbourhood, as better qualified to aſſiſt me in the undertaking which I had propoſed.

One of this ſmall company of natives was grievouſly afflicted with ulcers in his back; and the only attention which was paid to his miſerable condition, as far at leaſt as we could diſcover, proceeded from a woman, who carefully employed a bunch of feathers in preventing the flies from ſettling upon his ſores.

At ten this morning we landed near the lodges which had already been mentioned to us, and I ordered my people to make preparation for paſſing the remaining part of the day here, in order to obtain that familiarity with the natives which might induce them to afford me, without reſerve,

ſerve, the information that I ſhould require from them. This object, however, was in danger of being altogether fruſtrated, by a miſunderſtanding that had taken place between the natives and my young Indians, who were already arrived there. Before the latter could diſembark, the former ſeized the canoe, and dragged it on ſhore, and in this act of violence the boat was broken, from the weight of the perſons in it. This inſult was on the point of being ſeriouſly revenged, when I arrived, to prevent the conſequences of ſuch a diſpoſition. The variation of the compaſs was about twenty-nine degrees to the Eaſt.

At four in the afternoon I ordered my interpreter to harangue the natives, aſſembled in council; but his long diſcourſe obtained little ſatisfactory intelligence from them. Their account of the river to the Weſtward, was ſimilar to that which we had already received; and their deſcription of the inhabitants of that country, was ſtill more abſurd and ridiculous. They repreſented them as being of a gigantic ſtature, and adorned with wings; which, however, they never employed in flying. That they fed on large birds, which they killed with the greateſt eaſe, though common men would be certain victims of their voracity if they ventured to approach them. They alſo deſcribed the people that inhabited the mouth of the river as poſſeſſing the extraordinary power of killing with their eyes, and devouring a large beaver at a ſingle meal. They added that canoes of very large dimenſions viſited that place. They did not, however, relate theſe ſtrange circumſtances from their own knowledge, but on the reports of other tribes, as they themſelves never ventured to proceed beyond the firſt mountains, where they went in ſearch of the ſmall

white

white buffaloes, as the inhabitants of the other ſide endeavour to kill them whenever they meet. They likewiſe mentioned that the ſources of thoſe ſtreams which are tributary to both the great rivers, are ſeparated by the mountains. It appeared to us, however, that theſe people knew more about the country than they choſe to communicate, or at leaſt reached me, as the interpreter, who had long been tired of the voyage, might conceal ſuch a part of their communications as, in his opinion, would induce me to follow new routes, or extend my excurſions. No ſooner was the conference concluded, than they began to dance, which is their favourite, and, except jumping, their only amuſement. In this paſtime old and young, male and female, continued their exertions, till their ſtrength was exhauſted. This exerciſe was accompanied by loud imitations of the various noiſes produced by the rein-deer, the bear, and the wolf.

When they had finiſhed their antics, I deſired the Engliſh chief to renew the former ſubjects, which he did without ſucceſs. I therefore aſſumed an angry air, expreſſed my ſuſpicions that they withheld their information, and concluded with a menace, that if they did not give me all the ſatisfaction in their power, I would force one of them along with me to-morrow, to point out the road to the other river. On this declaration, they all, at one and the ſame moment, became ſick, and anſwered in a very faint tone, that they knew no more than they had already communicated, and that they ſhould die if I took any of them away. They began to perſuade my interpreter to remain with them, as they loved him as well as they did themſelves, and that he would be killed if he continued

with

with me. Nor did this propoſition, aided as it was by the ſolicitation of his women, fail of producing a conſiderable effect upon him, though he endeavoured to conceal it from me.

I now found that it would be fruitleſs for me to expect any accounts of the country, or the other great river, till I got to the river of the Bear Lake, where I expected to find ſome of the natives, who promiſed to wait for us there. Theſe people had actually mentioned this river to me when we paſſed them, but I then paid no attention to that circumſtance, as I imagined it to be either a miſunderſtanding of my interpreter, or that it was an invention which, with their other lies, might tend to prevent me from proceeding down their river.

We were plentifully ſupplied with fiſh, as well dry as freſh, by theſe people; they alſo gathered as many hurtle berries as we choſe, for which we paid with the uſual articles of beads, awls, knives, and tin. I purchaſed a few beaver-ſkins of them, which, according to their accounts, are not very numerous in this country; and that they do not abound in mooſe-deer and buffaloes. They were alarmed for ſome of their young men, who were killing geeſe higher up the river, and entreated us to do them no harm. About ſun-ſet I was under the neceſſity of ſhooting one of their dogs, as we could not keep thoſe animals from our baggage. It was in vain that I had remonſtrated on this ſubject, ſo that I was obliged to commit the act which has been juſt mentioned. When theſe people heard the report of the piſtol, and ſaw the dog dead, they were ſeized with a very general alarm, and the women took their children on their backs and ran into the woods. I ordered the

cauſe

caufe of this act of feverity to be explained, with the affurance that no injury would be offered to themfelves. The woman, however, to whom the dog belonged, was very much affected, and declared that the lofs of five children, during the preceding winter, had not affected her fo much as the death of this animal. But her grief was not of very long duration; and a few beads, &c. foon affuaged her forrow. But as they can without difficulty get rid of their affliction, they can with equal eafe affume it, and feign ficknefs if it be neceffary with the fame verfatility. When we arrived this morning, we found the women in tears, from an apprehenfion that we were come to take them away. To the eye of an European they certainly were objects of difguft; but there were thofe among my party who obferved fome hidden charms in thefe females which rendered them objects of defire, and means were found, I believe, that very foon diffipated their alarms and fubdued their coynefs.

On the upper part of the beach, liquorice grew in great abundance and it was now in bloffom. I pulled up fome of the roots, which were large and long; but the natives were ignorant of its qualities, and confidered it as a weed of no ufe or value.

(Tuefday 28.) At four this morning I ordered my people to prepare for our departure; and while they were loading the canoe, I went with the Englifh chief to vifit the lodges, but the greater part of their inhabitants had quitted them during the night, and thofe that remained pretended ficknefs, and refufed to rife. When, however, they were convinced that we did not mean to take any of them with us, their ficknefs abandoned them, and when

we had embarked, they came forth from their huts, to desire that we would visit their nets, which were at a small distance up the river, and take all the fish we might find in them. We accordingly availed ourselves of this permission, and took as many as were necessary for our own supply.

We landed shortly after where there were two more lodges, which were full of fish, but without any inhabitants, who were probably with the natives whom we had just left. My Indians, in rummaging these places, found several articles which they proposed to take; I therefore gave beads and awls, to be left as the purchase of them; but this act of justice they were not able to comprehend, as the people themselves were not present. I took up a net and left a large knife in the place of it. It was about four fathoms long, and thirty-two meshes in depth: these nets are much more convenient to set in the eddy current than our long ones. This is the place that the Indians call a rapid, though we went up it all the way with the paddle; so that the current could not be so strong here, as in many other parts of the river; indeed if it were so, the difficulty of towing would be almost insuperable, as in many parts the rocks, which are of a great height and rather project over the water, leave no shore between them and the stream. These precipices abound in swallows' nests. The weather was now very sultry, and at eleven we were under the necessity of landing to gum our canoe.

In about an hour we set forward, and at one in the afternoon, went on shore at a fire, which we supposed to have been kindled by the young men, who, as we had been already informed, were hunting geese. Our hunters found their canoe and the fowl they had got, secreted in the woods;

woods; and ſoon after, the people themſelves, whom they brought to the waterſide. Out of two hundred geeſe we picked thirty-ſix which were eatable; the reſt were putrid and emitted an horrid ſtench. They had been killed ſome time without having been gutted, and in this ſtate of loathſome rottenneſs, we have every reaſon to ſuppoſe they are eaten by the natives. We paid for thoſe which we had taken, and departed. At ſeven in the evening, the weather became cloudy and overcaſt; at eight we encamped; at nine, it began to thunder with great violence; an heavy rain ſucceeded, accompanied with an hurricane, that blew down our tents, and threatened to carry away the canoe, which had been faſtened to ſome trees with a cod-line. The ſtorm laſted two hours and deluged us with wet.

(Wedneſ. 29.) Yeſterday the weather was cloudy and the heat inſupportable; and now we could not put on clothes enough to keep us warm. We embarked at a quarter paſt four with an aft wind, which drove us on at a great rate, though the current is very ſtrong. At ten we came to the other rapid which we got up with the line on the Weſt ſide, where we found it much ſtronger than when we went down; the water had alſo fallen at leaſt five feet ſince that time, ſo that ſeveral ſhoals appeared in the river which we had not ſeen before. One of my hunters narrowly eſcaped being drowned in croſſing a river that falls in from the Weſtward, and is the moſt conſiderable, except the mountain river, that flows in this direction. We had ſtrong Northerly and cold wind throughout the whole of the day, and took our ſtation for the night at a quarter paſt eight. We killed a gooſe and caught ſome young ones.

(Thurſday 30.) We renewed our voyage at four this morning after a very rainy night. The weather was cloudy, but the cold had moderated, and the wind was North-Weſt. We were enabled to employ the ſail during part of the day, and encamped at about ſeven in the evening. We killed eleven old geeſe and forty young ones which had juſt begun to fly. The Engliſh chief was very much irritated againſt one of his young men: that jealouſy occaſioned this uneaſineſs, and that it was not without very ſufficient cauſe, was all I could diſcover. For the laſt two or three days we had eaten the liquorice root, of which there is great abundance on the banks of the river. We found it a powerful aſtringent.

(Friday 31.) The rain was continual throughout the night, and did not ſubſide till nine this morning, when we renewed our progreſs. The wind and weather the ſame as yeſterday. About three in the afternoon it cleared up and the wind died away, when it became warm. At five the wind veered to the Eaſt, and brought cold along with it. There were plenty of whirtle berries, raſpberries, and a berry called *Poire*, which grows in the greateſt abundance. We were very much impeded in our way by ſhoals of ſand and ſmall ſtones, which render the water ſhallow at a diſtance from the ſhore. In other places the bank of the river is lofty: it is formed of black earth and ſand, and, as it is continually falling, diſplayed to us, in ſome parts, a face of ſolid ice, to within a foot of the ſurface. We finiſhed this day's voyage at a quarter before eight and in the courſe of it killed ſeven geeſe.

We

We now had recourſe to our corn, for we had only conſumed three days of our original proviſion ſince we began to mount the current. It was my intention to have aſcended the river on the South ſide from the laſt rapid, to diſcover if there were any rivers of conſequence that flow from the Weſtward: but the ſand-banks were ſo numerous and the current ſo ſtrong, that I was compelled to traverſe to the oppoſite ſide, where the eddy currents are very frequent, which gave us an opportunity of ſetting our nets and making much more head-way.

CHAP.

CHAPTER VII.

Voyage continued. Suspect the integrity of the interpreter. Stars visible. Springs of mineral water, and lumps of iron ore. Arrive at the river of the Bear Lake. Coal mine in a state of combustion. Water of the river diminished. Continue to see Indian encampments, and kill geese, &c. Hunting excursions. A canoe found on the edge of a wood. Attempt to ascend a mountain. Account of the passage to it. See a few of the natives. Kill a beaver and some hares. Design of the English chief. Kill a wolf. Changeable state of the weather. Recover the Pemmican, which had been hidden in an island. Natives fly at our approach. Meet with dogs. Altercation with the English chief. Account of the articles left by the fugitives. Shoals of the river covered with saline matter. Encamp at the mouth of the river of the mountain. The ground on fire on each side of it. Continue to see encampments of the natives. Various kinds of berries. Kill geese, swans, &c. &c. &c. Corroding quality of the water. Weather changeable. Reach the entrance of the Slave Lake. Dangers encountered on entering it. Caught pike and trout. Met M. Le Roux on the lake. Further circumstances till our return to Fort Chepewyan. Conclusion of the voyage.

1789 AUGUST.

(Saturday 1.) WE embarked at three this morning, the weather being clear and cold, with the wind at

at South-East. At three in the afternoon we traversed and landed to take the canoe in tow: here was an encampment of the natives, which we had reason to suppose they had quitted the preceding day. At five we perceived a family, consisting of a man, two women, and as many children, stationed by the side of the water, whom we had not seen before. They informed us, that they had but few fish, and that none of their friends were in the neighbourhood, except the inhabitants of one lodge on the other side of the river, and a man who belonged to them, and who was now occupied in hunting. I now found my interpreter very unwilling to ask such questions as were dictated to him, from the apprehension, as I imagined, that I might obtain such intelligence as would prevent him from seeing Athabasca this season. We left him with the Indian, and pitched our tents at the same place where we had passed the night on the fifth of last month. The English chief came along with the Indian to our fire; and the latter informed us that the native who went down part of the river with us had passed there, and that we should meet with three lodges of his tribe above the river of the Bear Lake. Of the river to the Westward he knew nothing but from the relation of others. This was the first night since our departure from Athabasca, when it was sufficiently dark to render the stars visible.

(Sunday 2.) We set off at three this morning with the towing-line. I walked with my Indians, as they went faster than the canoe, and particularly as I suspected that they wanted to arrive at the huts of the natives before me. In our way, I observed several small springs of

of mineral water running from the foot of the mountain, and along the beach I ſaw ſeveral lumps of iron ore. When we came to the river of the Bear Lake, I ordered one of the young Indians to wait for my canoe, and I took my place in their ſmall canoe. This river is about two hundred and fifty yards broad at this place, the water clear and of a greeniſh colour. When I landed on the oppoſite ſhore, I diſcovered that the natives had been there very lately from the print of their feet in the ſand. We continued walking till five in the afternoon, when we ſaw ſeveral ſmokes along the ſhore. As we naturally concluded, that theſe were certain indications where we ſhould meet the natives who were the objects of our ſearch, we quickened our pace; but, in our progreſs, experienced a very ſulphurous ſmell, and at length diſcovered that the whole bank was on fire for a very conſiderable diſtance. It proved to be a coal mine, to which the fire had communicated from an old Indian encampment. The beach was covered with coals, and the Engliſh chief gathered ſome of the ſofteſt he could find, as a black dye; it being the mineral, as he informed me, with which the natives render their quills black.

Here we waited for the large canoe, which arrived an hour after us. At half paſt ten we ſaw ſeveral Indian marks, which conſiſted of pieces of bark fixed on poles, and pointing to the woods, oppoſite to which is an old beaten road, that bore the marks of being lately frequented; the beach alſo was covered with tracks. At a ſmall diſtance were the poles of five lodges ſtanding; where we landed and unloaded our canoe. I then diſpatched one of my men and two young Indians

to

to ſee if they could find any natives within a day's march of us. I wanted the Engliſh chief to go, but he pleaded fatigue, and that it would be of no uſe. This was the firſt time he had refuſed to comply with my deſire, and jealouſy, I believe, was the cauſe of it in the preſent inſtance; though I had taken every precaution that he ſhould not have cauſe to be jealous of the Canadians. There was not, at this time, the leaſt appearance of ſnow on the oppoſite mountains, though they were almoſt covered with it when we paſſed before. Set two nets, and at eleven o'clock at night the men and Indians returned. They had been to their firſt encampment, where there were four fires, and which had been quitted a ſhort time before; ſo that they were obliged to make the circuit of ſeveral ſmall lakes, which the natives croſs with their canoes. This encampment was on the borders of a lake which was too large for them to venture round it, ſo that they did not proceed any further. They ſaw ſeveral beavers and beaver lodges in thoſe ſmall lakes. They killed one of theſe animals whoſe fur began to get long, a ſure indication that the fall of the year approaches. They alſo ſaw many old tracks of the mooſe and rein-deer. This is the time when the rein-deer leave the plains to come to the woods, as the muſquitoes begin to diſappear; I, therefore, apprehended that we ſhould not find a ſingle Indian on the river ſide, as they would be in, or about the mountains ſetting ſnares to take them.

(Monday 3.) We proceeded with a ſtrong Weſterly wind, at four this morning, the weather being cloudy and cold. At twelve it cleared up and became fine:

the current alſo increaſed. The water had fallen ſo much ſince our paſſage down the river, that here, as in other places, we diſcovered many ſhoals which were not then viſible. We killed ſeveral geeſe of a larger ſize than thoſe which we had generally ſeen. Several Indian encampments were ſeen along the river, and we landed at eight for the night.

(Tueſday 4.) At four in the morning we renewed our courſe, when it was fine and calm. The night had been cold and a very heavy dew had fallen. At nine we were obliged to land in order to gum the canoe, when the weather became extremely warm. Numerous tracks of rein-deer appeared on the ſide of the river. At half paſt five we took our ſtation for the night, and ſet the nets. The current was very ſtrong all day, and we found it very difficult to walk along the beach, from the large ſtones which were ſcattered over it.

(Wedneſ. 3.) We raiſed our nets but had not the good fortune to take a ſingle fiſh. The water was now become ſo low that the eddy currents would not admit of ſetting them. The current had not relaxed its ſtrength; and the difficulty of walking along the beach was continued. The air was now become ſo cold, that our exerciſe, violent as it was, ſcarce kept us warm. We paſſed ſeveral points which we ſhould not have accompliſhed, if the canoe had been loaded. We were very much fatigued, and at ſix were glad to conclude our toilſome march. The Indians killed two geeſe. The women who did not quit the canoe, were continually employed in making ſhoes of mooſe-ſkin, for the men, as a pair did not laſt more than a day.

(Thurſday 6.)

(Thurſday 6.) The rain prevented us from proceeding till half paſt ſix, when we had a ſtrong aft wind, which, aided by the paddles, drove us on at a great rate. We encamped at ſix to wait for our Indians, whom we had not ſeen ſince the morning; and at half paſt ſeven they arrived very much diſſatisfied with their day's journey. Two days had now elapſed ſince we had ſeen the leaſt appearance of Indian habitations.

(Friday 7.) We embarked at half paſt three, and ſoon after perceived two rein-deer on the beach before us. We accordingly checked our courſe; but our Indians, in contending who ſhould be the firſt to get near theſe animals, alarmed and loſt them. We, however, killed a female rein-deer, and from the wounds in her hind-legs, it was ſuppoſed that ſhe had been purſued by wolves, who had devoured her young one: her udder was full of milk, and one of the young Indians poured it among ſome boiled corn, which he ate with great delight, eſteeming it a very delicious food. At five in the afternoon we ſaw an animal runing along the beach, but could not determine, whether it was a grey fox or a dog. In a ſhort time we went aſhore for the night, at the entrance of a ſmall river, as I thought there might be ſome natives in the vicinity of the place. I ordered my hunters to put their fuzees in order, and gave them ammunition to proceed on an hunting party the next day; they were alſo inſtructed to diſcover if there were any natives in the neighbouring mountains. I found a ſmall canoe at the edge of the woods, which contained a paddle and a bow: it had been repaired this ſpring, and the workmanſhip of the bark excelled any that I had yet ſeen.

We ſaw ſeveral encampments in the courſe of the day. The current of the river was very ſtrong, and along the points equal to rapids.

(Saturday 8.) The rain was very violent throughout the night, and continued till the afternoon of this day, when the weather began to clear, with a ſtrong, cold, and Weſterly wind. At three the Indians proceeded on the hunting expedition, and at eight they returned without having met with the leaſt ſucceſs; though they ſaw numerous tracks of the rein-deer. They came to an old beaten road, which one of them followed for ſome time: but it did not appear to have been lately frequented. The rain now returned and continued till the morning.

(Sunday 9.) We renewed our voyage at half paſt three, the weather being cold and cloudy; but at ten it became clear and moderate. We ſaw another canoe at the outſide of the wood, and one of the Indians killed a dog, which was in a meagre, emaciated condition. We perceived various places where the natives had made their fires; for theſe people reſide but a ſhort time near the river, and remove from one bank to the other, as it ſuits their purpoſes. We ſaw a path which was connected with another on the oppoſite ſide of the river. The water had riſen conſiderably ſince laſt night, and there had been a ſtrong current throughout the day. At ſeven we made to the ſhore and encamped.

(Monday 10.) At three this morning we returned to our canoe; the weather fine and clear, with a light

wind from the South-Eaſt. The Indians were before us in purſuit of game. At ten we landed oppoſite to the mountains which we had paſſed on the ſecond of the laſt month, in order to aſcertain the variation of the compaſs at this place; but this was accompliſhed in a very imperfect manner, as I could not depend on my watch. One of the hunters joined us here, fatigued and unſucceſsful. As theſe mountains are the laſt of any conſiderable magnitude on the South-Weſt ſide of the river, I ordered my men to croſs to that ſide of it, that I might aſcend one of them. It was near four in the afternoon when I landed, and I loſt no time in proceeding to the attainment of my object. I was accompanied only by a young Indian, as the curioſity of my people was ſubdued by the fatigue they had undergone; and we ſoon had reaſon to believe that we ſhould pay dearly for the indulgence of our own. The wood, which was chiefly of ſpruce firs, was ſo thick that it was with great difficulty we made our way through it. When we had walked upwards of an hour, the under-wood decreaſed, while the white birch and poplar were the largeſt and talleſt of their kind that I had ever ſeen. The ground now began to riſe, and was covered with ſmall pines, and at length we got the firſt view of the mountains ſince we had left the canoe; as they appeared to be no nearer to us, though we had been walking for three hours, than when we had ſeen them from the river, my companion expreſſed a very great anxiety to return; his ſhoes and leggins were torn to pieces, and he was alarmed at the idea of paſſing through ſuch bad roads during the night. I perſiſted, however, in proceeding, with a determination to paſs the night on the mountains

tains and return on the morrow. As we approached them, the ground was quite marſhy, and we waded in water and graſs up to the knees, till we came within a mile of them, when I ſuddenly ſunk up to my armpits, and it was with ſome difficulty that I extricated myſelf from this diſagreeable ſituation. I now found it impoſſible to proceed: to croſs this marſhy ground in a ſtraight line was impracticable; and it extended ſo far to the right and left, that I could not attempt to make the circuit: I therefore determined to return to the canoe, and arrived there about midnight, very much fatigued with this fruitleſs journey.

(Tueſday 11.) We obſerved ſeveral tracks along the beach, and an encampment at the edge of the woods, which appeared to be five or ſix days old. We ſhould have continued our route along this ſide of the river, but we had not ſeen our hunters ſince yeſterday morning. We accordingly embarked before three, and at five traverſed the river, when we ſaw two of them coming down in ſearch of us. They had killed no other animals than one beaver, and a few hares. According to their account, the woods were ſo thick that it was impoſſible to follow the game through them. They had ſeen ſeveral of the native's encampments, at no great diſtance from the river; and it was their opinion that they had diſcovered us in our paſſage down it, and had taken care to avoid us; which accounted for the ſmall number we had ſeen on our return.

I requeſted the Engliſh chief to return with me to the other ſide of the river, in order that he might proceed to diſcover the natives, whoſe tracks and habita-

tions we had ſeen there; but he was backward in complying with my deſire, and propoſed to ſend the young men; but I could not truſt to them, and at the ſame time was become rather doubtful of him. They were ſtill afraid leſt I ſhould obtain ſuch accounts of the other river as would induce me to travel overland to it, and that they ſhould be called upon to accompany me. I was, indeed, informed by one of my own people, that the Engliſh chief, his wives and companions, had determined to leave me on this ſide of the Slave Lake, in order to go to the country of the Beaver Indians; and that about the middle of the winter he would return to that lake, where he had appointed to meet ſome of his relations, who, during the laſt ſpring, had been engaged in war.

We now traverſed the river, and continued to track the Indians till paſt twelve, when we loſt all traces of them; in conſequence, as we imagined, of their having croſſed to the Eaſtern ſide. We ſaw ſeveral dogs on both ſhores; and one of the young Indians killed a wolf, which the men ate with great ſatisfaction: we ſhot, alſo fifteen young geeſe that were now beginning to fly. It was eight when we took our evening ſtation, having loſt four hours in making our traverſes. There was no interruption of the fine weather during the courſe of this day.

(Wedneſ. 12.) We proceeded on our voyage at three this morning, and diſpatched the two young Indians acroſs the river, that we might not miſs any of the natives that ſhould be on the banks of it. We ſaw many places where fires had been lately made along

the

the beach, as well as fire running in the woods. At four we arrived at an encampment which had been left this morning. Their tracks were obſervable in ſeveral places in the woods, and as it might be preſumed that they could not be at any great diſtance, it was propoſed to the chief to accompany me in ſearch of them. We accordingly, though with ſome heſitation on his part, penetrated ſeveral miles into the woods, but without diſcovering the objects of our reſearch. The fire had ſpread all over the country, and had burned about three inches of the black, light ſoil, which covered a body of cold clay, that was ſo hard as not to receive the leaſt impreſſion of our feet. At ten we returned from our unſucceſsful excurſion. In the mean time the hunters had killed ſeven geeſe. There were ſeveral ſhowers of rain, accompanied with guſts of wind and thunder. The nets had been ſet during our abſence.

(Thurſd. 13.) The nets were taken up, but not one fiſh was found in them; and at half paſt three we continued our route, with very favourable weather. We paſſed ſeveral places, where fires had been made by the natives, and many tracks were perceptible along the beach. At ſeven we were oppoſite the iſland where our Pemmicam had been concealed: two of the Indians were accordingly diſpatched in ſearch of it, and it proved very acceptable, as it rendered us more independent of the proviſions which were to be obtained by our fowling pieces, and qualified us to get out of the river without that delay which our hunters would otherwiſe have required. In a ſhort time we perceived a ſmoke on the ſhore to the South-Weſt, at the diſtance of three leagues, which did not appear to proceed from any

running

running fire. The Indians, who were a little way a head of us, did not discover it, being engaged in the pursuit of a flock of geese, at which they fired several shots, when the smoke immediately disappeared; and in a short time we saw several of the natives run along the shore, some of whom entered their canoes. Though we were almost opposite to them, we could not cross the river without going further up it, from the strength of the current; I therefore ordered our Indians to make every possible exertion, in order to speak with them, and wait our arrival. But as soon as our small canoe struck off, we could perceive the poor affrighted people hasten to the shore, and after drawing their canoes on the beach, hurry into the woods. It was past ten before we landed at the place where they had deserted their canoes, which were four in number. They were so so terrified that they had left several articles on the beach. I was very much displeased with my Indians, who instead of seeking the natives, were dividing their property. I rebuked the English chief with some severity for his conduct, and immediately ordered him, his young men, and my own people, to go in search of the fugitives, but their fears had made them too nimble for us, and we could not overtake them. We saw several dogs in the woods, and some of them followed us to our canoe.

The English chief was very much displeased at my reproaches, and expressed himself to me in person to that effect. This was the very opportunity which I wanted, to make him acquainted with my dissatisfaction for some time past. I stated to him that I had come a great way, and at a very considerable expence, without having completed the object of my wishes, and that I

 suspected

ſuſpected he had concealed from me a principal part of what the natives had told him reſpecting the country, leſt he ſhould be obliged to follow me: that his reaſon for not killing game, &c. was his jealouſy, which likewiſe prevented him from looking after the natives as he ought; and that we had never given him any cauſe for any ſuſpicions of us. Theſe ſuggeſtions irritated him in a very high degree, and he accuſed me of ſpeaking ill words to him; he denied the charge of jealouſy, and declared that he did not conceal any thing from us; and that as to the ill ſucceſs of their hunting, it aroſe from the nature of the country, and the ſcarcity, which had hitherto appeared, of animals in it. He concluded by informing me that he would not accompany me any further; that though he was without ammunition, he could live in the ſame maner as the ſlaves, (the name given to the inhabitants of that part of the country), and that he would remain among them. His harangue was ſucceeded by a loud and bitter lamentation; and his relations aſſiſted the vociferations of his grief; though they ſaid that their tears flowed for their dead friends. I did not interrupt their grief for two hours, but as I could not well do without them, I was at length obliged to ſooth it, and induce the chief change his reſolution, which he did, but with great apparent reluctance; when we embarked as we had hitherto done.

The articles which the fugitives had left behind them, on the preſent occaſion, were bows, arrows, ſnares for mooſe and rein-deer, and for hares; to theſe may be added a few diſhes, made of bark, ſome ſkins of the marten and the beaver, and old beaver robes, with a ſmall

ſmall robe made of the ſkin of the lynx. Their canoes were coarſely made of the bark of the ſpruce-fir, and will carry two or three people. I ordered my men to remove them to the ſhade, and gave moſt of the other articles to the young Indians. The Engliſh chief would not accept of any of them. In the place, and as the purchaſe of them, I left ſome cloth, ſome ſmall knives, a file, two fire-ſteels, a comb, rings, with beads and awls. I alſo ordered a marten ſkin to be placed on a proper mould, and a beaver ſkin to be ſtretched on a frame, to which I tied a ſcraper. The Indians were of opinion that all theſe articles would be loſt, as the natives were ſo much frightened that they would never return. Here we loſt ſix hours; and on our quitting the place, three of the dogs which I have already mentioned followed us along the beach.

We pitched our tents at half paſt eight, at the entrance of the river of the mountain; and while the people were unloading the canoe, I took a walk along the beach, and on the ſhoals, which being uncovered ſince we paſſed down, by the ſinking of the waters, were now white with a ſaline ſubſtance. I ſent for the Engliſh Chief to ſup with me, and a dram or two diſpelled all his heart-burning and diſcontent. He informed me that is was a cuſtom with the Chepewyan chiefs to go to war after they had ſhed tears, in order to wipe away the diſgrace attached to ſuch a feminine weakneſs, and that in the enſuing ſpring he ſhould not fail to execute his deſign; at the ſame time he declared his intention to continue with us as long as I ſhould want him. I took care that he ſhould carry ſome liquid conſolation to his lodge, to prevent the

 return

return of his chagrin. The weather was fine, and the Indians killed three geese.

(Friday 14.) At a quarter before four this morning, we returned to our canoe, and went about two miles up the river of the mountains. Fire was in the ground on each side of it. In traversing, I took soundings, and found five, four and an half, and three and an half fathoms water. Its stream was very muddy, and formed a cloudy streak along the water of the great river, on the West side to the Eastern rapid, where the waters of the two rivers at length blend in one. It was impossible not to consider it as an extraordinary circumstance, that the current of the former river should not incorporate with that of the latter, but flow, as it were, in distinct streams at so great a distance, and *till* the contracted state of the channel unites them. We passed several encampments of the natives, and a river which flowed in from the North, that had the appearance of being navigable. We concluded our voyage of this day at half past five in the afternoon. There were plenty of berries, which my people called *poires*; they are of a purple hue, somewhat bigger than a pea, and of a luscious taste; there were also gooseberries, and a few strawberries.

(Saturday 15.) We continued our course from three in the morning till half past five in the afternoon. We saw several encampments along the beach, till it became too narrow to admit them; when the banks rose into a considerable degree of elevation, and there were more eddy currents. The Indians killed twelve geese,

geeſe, and berries were collected in great abundance. The weather was ſultry throughout the day.

(Sunday 16.) We continued our voyage at a quarter before four, and in five hours paſſed the place where we had been ſtationed on the 13th of June. Here the river widened, and its ſhores became flat. The land on the North ſide is low, compoſed of a black ſoil, mixed with ſtones, but agreeably covered with the aſpen, the poplar, the white birch, the ſpruce fir, &c. The current was ſo moderate, that we proceeded upon it almoſt as faſt as in dead water. At twelve we paſſed an encampment of three fires, which was the only one we ſaw in the courſe of the day. The weather was the ſame as yeſterday.

(Monday 17.) We proceeded at half paſt three; and ſaw three ſucceſſive encampments. From the peculiar ſtructure of the huts, we imagined that ſome of the Red-Knife Indians had been in this part of the country, though it is not uſual for them to come this way. I had laſt night ordered the young Indians to precede us, for the purpoſe of hunting, and at ten we overtook them. They had killed five young ſwans; and the Engliſh chief preſented us with an eagle, three cranes, a ſmall beaver, and two geeſe. We encamped at ſeven this evening on the ſame ſpot which had been our reſting-place on the 29th of June.

(Tueſday 18.) At four this morning I equipped all the Indians for an hunting excurſion, and ſent them onward, as our ſtock of proviſion was nearly exhauſted. We followed at half paſt ſix, and croſſed over to the

North

North ſhore, where the land is low and ſcarcely viſible in the horizon. I now got an obſervation, when it was 61. 33. North latitude. We were near five miles to the North of the main channel of the river. The freſh tracks and beds of buffaloes were very perceptible. Near this place a river flowed in from the Horn mountains which are at no great diſtance. We landed at five in the afternoon, and before the canoe was unloaded, the Engliſh chief arrived with the tongue of a cow, or female buffalo, when four men and the Indians where diſpatched for the fleſh; but they did not return till it was dark. They informed me, that they had ſeen ſeveral human tracks in the ſand on the oppoſite iſland. The fine weather continued without interruption.

(Wedneſ. 19.) The Indians were again ſent forward in purſuit of game: and ſome time being employed in gumming the canoe, we did not embark till half paſt five, and at nine we landed to wait the return of the hunters. I here found the variation of the compaſs to be about twenty degrees Eaſt.

The people made themſelves paddles and repaired the canoe. It is an extraordinary circumſtance for which I do not pretend to account, that there is ſome peculiar quality in the water of this river, which corrodes wood, from the deſtructive effect it had on the paddles. The hunters arrived at a late hour without having ſeen any large animals. Their booty conſiſted only of three ſwans and as many geeſe. The women were employed in gathering cranberries and crowberries, which were found in great abundance.

(Thurſday

(Thurſday 20.) We embarked at four o'clock, and took the North ſide of the channel, though the current was on that ſide much ſtronger, in order to take a view of the river, which had been mentioned to me in our paſſage downwards, as flowing from the country of the Beaver Indians, and which fell in hereabouts. We could not, however, diſcover it, and it is probable that the account was referable to the river which we had paſſed on Tueſday. The current was very ſtrong, and we croſſed over to an iſland oppoſite to us; here it was ſtill more impetuous, and aſſumed the hurry of a rapid. We found an awl and a paddle on the ſide of the water; the former we knew to belong to the Kniſtineaux: I ſuppoſed it to be the chief Merde-d'ours and his party, who went to war laſt ſpring, and had taken this route on their return to Athabaſca. Nor is it improbable that they may have been the cauſe that we ſaw ſo few of the natives on the banks of this river. The weather was raw and cloudy, and formed a very unpleaſant contraſt to the warm, ſunny days which immediately preceded it. We took up our abode for the night at half paſt ſeven, on the Northern ſhore, where the adjacent country is both low and flat. The Indians killed five young ſwans, and a beaver. There was an appearance of rain.

(Friday 21.) The weather was cold, with a ſtrong Eaſterly wind and frequent ſhowers, ſo that we were detained in our ſtation. In the afternoon the Indians got on the track of a mooſe-deer, but were not ſo fortunate as to overtake it.

(Saturday 22.) The wind veered round to the Weſtward,

ward, and continued to blow ſtrong and cold. We, however, renewed our voyage, and, in three hours reached the entrance of the Slave Lake, under half ſail; with the paddle, it would have taken us at leaſt eight hours. The Indians did not arrive till four hours after us; but the wind was ſo violent, that it was not expedient to venture into the lake; we therefore ſet a net and encamped for the night. The women gathered large quantities of the fruit, already mentioned, called Pathagomenan, and cranberries, crowberries, mooſeberries, &c. The Indians killed two ſwans and three geeſe.

(Sunday 23.) The net produced but five ſmall pike, and at five we embarked, and entered the lake by the ſame channel through which we had paſſed from it. The South-Weſt ſide would have been the ſhorteſt, but we were not certain of there being plenty of fiſh along the coaſt, and we were ſure of finding abundance of them in the courſe we preferred. Beſides, I expected to find my people at the place where I left them, as they had received orders to remain there till the fall.

We paddled a long way into a deep bay to get the wind, and having left our maſt behind us, we landed to cut another. We then hoiſted ſail and were driven on at a great rate. At twelve the wind and ſwell were augmented to ſuch a degree, that our under yard broke, but luckily the maſt thwart reſiſted, till we had time to faſten down the yard with a pole, without lowering ſail. We took in a large quantity of water, aud had our maſt given way, in all probability, we ſhould have filled and ſunk. Our courſe continued to be very dangerous, along a flat lee-ſhore, without being able to land till

three

three in the afternoon. Two men were continually employed in bailing out the water which we took in on all ſides. We fortunately doubled a point that ſcreened us from the wind and ſwell, and encamped for the night, in order to wait for our Indians. We then ſet our nets, made a yard and maſt, and gummed the canoe. On viſiting the nets, we found ſix white fiſh, and two pike. The women gathered cranberries and crowberries in great plenty; and as the night came on the weather became more moderate.

(Monday 24.) Our nets this morning produced fourteen white fiſh, ten pikes, and a couple of trouts. At five we embarked with a light breeze from the South, when we hoiſted ſail, and proceeded ſlowly, as our Indians had not come up with us. At eleven we went on ſhore to prepare the kettle, and dry the nets; at one we were again on the water. At four in the afternoon we perceived a large canoe with a ſail, and two ſmall ones a-head; we ſoon came up with them, when they proved to be M. Le Roux and an Indian, with his family, who were on an hunting party, and had been out twenty five days. It was his intention to have gone as far as the river, to leave a letter for me, to inform me of his ſituation. He had ſeen no more Indians where I had left him; but had made a voyage to Lac la Marte, where he met eighteen ſmall canoes of the Slave Indians, from whom he obtained five packs of ſkins, which were principally thoſe of the marten. There were four Beaver Indians among them, who had bartered the greateſt part of the abovementioned articles with them, before his arrival. They informed him that their relations had more ſkins, but that they were afraid to venture with them, though they had been informed

that people were to come with goods to barter for them. He gave these people a pair of ice chisels each, and other articles, and sent them away to conduct their friends to the Slave Lake, where he was to remain during the succeeding winter.

We set three nets, and in a short time caught twenty fish of different kinds. In the dusk of the evening the English chief arrived with a most pitiful account that he had like to have been drowned in trying to follow us, and that the other men had also a very narrow escape. Their canoe, he said, had broken on the swell, at some distance from the shore, but as it was flat, they had with his assistance been able to save themselves. He added, that he left them lamenting, lest they should not overtake me, if I did not wait for them: he also expressed his apprehensions that they would not be able to repair their canoe. This evening I gave my men some rum to cheer them after their fatigues.

(Tuesday 25.) We rose this morning at a late hour, when we visited the nets, which produced but few fish: my people, indeed, partook of the stores of M. Le Roux. At eleven the young Indians arrived, and reproached me for having left them far behind. They had killed two swans, and brought me one of them. The wind was Southerly throughout the day, and too strong for us to depart, as we were at the foot of a grand traverse.. At noon I had an observation, which gave 61. 29. North latitude. Such was the state of the weather, that we could not visit our nets. In the afternoon the sky darkened, and there was lightning, accompanied with loud claps of thunder. The wind also veered round to the Westward, and blew an hurricane.

(Wednes. 26.) It rained throughout the night, and till

till eight in the morning, without any alteration in the wind. The Indians went on an hunting excurſion, but returned altogether without ſucceſs in the evening. One of them was ſo unfortunate as to miſs a mooſe-deer. In the aſternoon there were heavy ſhowers, with thunder, &c.

(Thurſ 27.) We embarked before four, and hoiſted ſail. At nine we landed to dreſs victuals, and wait for M. Le Roux and the Indians. At eleven we proceeded with fine and calm weather. At four in the afternoon a light breeze ſprang up to the Southward, to which we ſpread our ſail, and at half paſt five in the afternoon went on ſhore for the night. We then ſet our nets. The Engliſh chief and his people being quite exhauſted with fatigue, he this morning expreſſed his deſire to remain behind, in order to proceed to the country of the Beaver Indians, engaging at the ſame time that he would return to Athabaſca in the courſe of the winter.

(Friday 28.) It blew very hard throughout the night, and this morning, ſo that we found it a buſineſs of ſome difficulty to get to our nets; our trouble, however, was repaid by a conſiderable quantity of white fiſh, trout, &c. Towards the afternoon the wind increaſed. Two of the men who had been gathering berries ſaw two mooſe-deer, with the tracks of buffaloes and rein-deer. About ſun-ſet we heard two ſhots, and ſaw a fire on the oppoſite ſide of the bay; we accordingly made a large fire alſo, that our oppoſite might be determined. When we were all gone to bed, we heard the report of a gun very near us, and in a very ſhort time the Engliſh chief preſented himſelf drenched with wet, and in much apparent confuſion informed me that the canoe with his companions was broken to pieces; and that they had loſt their fowling pieces, and the fleſh

of a rein-deer, which they had killed this morning. They were, he said, at a very short distance from us; and at the same time requested that fire might be sent to them, as they were starving with cold. They and his women, however, soon joined us, and were immediately accommodated with dry clothes.

(Saturday 29.) I sent the Indians on an hunting party, but they returned without success; and they expressed their determination not to follow me any further, from their apprehension of being drowned.

(Sunday 30.) We embarked at one this morning, and took from the nets a large trout, and twenty white fish. At sun-rise a smart aft breeze sprang up, which wafted us to M. Le Roux's house by two in the afternoon. It was late before he and our Indians arrived; when, according to a promise which I had made the latter, I gave them a plentiful equipment of iron ware, ammunition, tobacco, &c. as a recompence for the toil and inconvenience they had sustained with me. I proposed to the English chief to proceed to the country of the Beaver Indians, and bring them to dispose of their peltries to M. Le Roux, whom I intended to leave there the ensuing winter. He had already engaged to be at Athabasca, in the month of March next, with plenty of furs.

(Monday 31.) I sat up all night to make the necessary arrangements for the embarkation of this morning, and to prepare instructions for M. Le Roux. We obtained some provisions here, and parted from him at five, with fine calm weather. It soon, however, became necessary to land on a small island, to stop the leakage of the canoe, which had been occasioned by the shot of an arrow under the water mark, by some Indian

dian children. While this buſineſs was proceeding, we took the opportunity of dreſſing ſome fiſh. At twelve the wind ſprang up from the South-Eaſt, which was in the teeth of our direction, ſo that our progreſs was greatly impeded. I had an obſervation, which gave 62. 15. North latitude. We landed at ſeven in the evening, and pitched our tents.

1789. SEPTEMBER.

(Tueſday 1.) We continued our voyage at five in the morning, the weather calm and fine, and paſſed the Iſle à la Cache about twelve, but could not perceive the land, which was ſeen in our former paſſage. On paſſing the Carreboeuf Iſlands, at five in the afternoon, we ſaw land to the South by Weſt, which we thought was the oppoſite ſide of the lake, ſtretching away to a great diſtance. We landed at half paſt ſix in the evening, when there was thunder, and an appearance of change in the weather.

(Wedneſ. 2.) It rained and blew hard the l[illegible] of the night. At half paſt five the rain [illegible] we made a traverſe of twelve miles, and took [illegible] good deal of water. At twelve it became calm, when I had an obſervation, which gave 61. 36. North latitude. At three in the afternoon there was a ſlight breeze from the Weſtward, which ſoon increaſed, when we hoiſted ſail, and took a traverſe of twenty-four miles for the point of the old Fort; where we arrived at ſeven and ſtopped for the night. This traverſe ſhortened our way three leagues; indeed we did not expect to have cleared the lake in ſuch a ſhort time.

(Thurſday 3.) It blew with great violence throughout the night, and at four in the morning we embarked, when we did not make more than five miles in three

hours

hours without ſtopping; notwithſtanding we were ſheltered from the ſwell by a long bank. We now entered the ſmall river, where the wind could have no effect upon us. There were frequent ſhowers in the courſe of the day, and we encamped at ſix in the evening.

(Friday 4.) The morning was dark and cloudy, nevertheleſs we embarked at five; but at ten it cleared up. We ſaw a few fowl, and at ſeven in the evening went on ſhore for the night.

(Saturday 5.) The weather continued to be cloudy. At five we proceeded, and at eight it began to rain very hard. In about half an hour we put to ſhore, and were detained for the remaining part of the day.

(Sunday 6.) It rained throughout the night, with a ſtrong North wind. Numerous flocks of wild fowl paſſed to the Southward: at ſix in the afternoon, the rain, in ſome meaſure, ſubſided, and we embarked, but it ſoon returned with renewed violence; we nevertheleſs took th[illegible]ntage of an aft wind, though it coſt us a com[illegible]ching. The hunters killed ſeven geeſe, and we pi[illegible] our tents at half paſt ſix in the evening.

(Monday 7.) We were on the water at five this morning, with an head-wind, accompanied by ſucceſſive ſhowers. At three in the afternoon we ran the canoe on a ſtump, and it filled with water before ſhe could be got to land. Two hours were employed in repairing her, and at ſeven in the evening we took our ſtation for the night.

(Tueſday 8.) We renewed our voyage at half paſt four in a thick miſt which laſted till nine, when it cleared away, and fine weather ſucceeded. At three in the afternoon we came to the firſt carrying-place, *Portage des Noyés*, and encamped at the upper end of it to dry our clothes, ſome of which were almoſt rotten.

(Wedneſ.

(Wedneſ. 9.) We embarked at five in the morning, and our canoe was damaged on the men's ſhoulders who were bearing it over the carrying-place, called *Portage du Chetique*. The guide repaired her, however, while the other men were employed in carrying the baggage. The canoe was gummed at the carrying-place, named the *Portage de la Montagne*. After having paſſed the carrying places, we encamped at the Dog River, at half paſt four in the afternoon, in a ſtate of great fatigue. The canoe was again gummed, and paddles were made to replace thoſe that had been broken in aſcending the rapids. A ſwan was the only animal we killed throughout the day.

(Thurſday 10.) There was rain and violent wind during the night; in the morning the former ſubſided and the latter increaſed. At half paſt five we continued our courſe with a North-Weſterly wind. At ſeven we hoiſted ſail: in the forenoon there were frequent ſhowers of rain and hail, and in the afternoon two ſhowers of ſnow: the wind was at this time very ſtrong, and at ſix in the evening we landed at a lodge of Kniſteneaux, conſiſting of three men and five women and children. They were on their return from war, and one of them was very ſick; they ſeparated from the reſt of their party in the enemy's country, from abſolute hunger. After this ſeparation, they met with a family of the hoſtile tribe, whom they deſtroyed. They were entirely ignorant of the fate of their friends, but imagined, that they had returned to the Peace River, or had periſhed for want of food. I gave medicine to the ſick,* and a ſmall portion of ammunition

* This man had conceived an idea, that the people with whom he had been at war, had thrown medicine at him,

to

to the healthy; which, indeed, they very much wanted, as they had entirely lived for the laſt ſix months on the produce of their bows and arrows. They appeared to have been great ſufferers by their expedition.

(Friday 11.) It froze hard during the night, and was very cold throughout the day, with an appearance of ſnow. We embarked at half paſt four in the morning, and continued our courſe till ſix in the evening, when we landed for the night at our encampment of the third of June.

(Saturday 12.) The weather was cloudy and alſo very cold. At eight we embarked with a North-Eaſt wind, and entered the Lake of the Hills. About ten, the wind veered to the Weſtward, and was as ſtrong as we could bear it with the high ſail, ſo that we arrived at Chepewyan fort by three o'clock in the afternoon, where we found Mr. Macleod, with five men, buſily employed in building a new houſe. Here, then, we concluded this voyage, which had occupied the conſiderable ſpace of one hundred and two days.

which had cauſed his preſent complaint, and that he deſpaired of recovery. The natives are ſo ſuperſtitious, that this idea alone was ſufficient to kill him. Of this weakneſs I took advantage; and aſſured him, that if he would never more go to war with ſuch poor defenceleſs people, that I would cure him. To this propoſition he readily conſented, and on my giving him medicine, which conſiſted of Turlington's balſam, mixed in water, I declared, that it would loſe its effect, if he was not ſincere in the promiſe that he made me. In ſhort, he actually recovered, was true to his engagements, and on all occaſions manifeſted his gratitude to me.

END of VOL. I.

CONTENTS.

VOL. I.

	Page.
PREFACE. - - - - - -	VII
A general hiſtory of the fur trade from Canada to the North-Weſt. - - - - -	I
SOME account of the Kniſteneaux Indians. -	113
EXAMPLES of the Kniſteneaux and Algonquin Tongues.	131
SOME account of the Chepewyan Indians -	142
EXAMPLES of the Chepewyan Tongue. -	158

FIRST VOYAGE.

CHAPTER I.

Embark at Fort Chepewyan, on the Lake of the Hills, in company with M. Le Roux. Account of the party, proviſions, &c. Direction of the courſe. Enter one of the branches of the Lake. Arrive in the Peace River. Appearance of the land. Navigation of the river. Arrive at the mouth of the Dog River. Succeſſive deſcription of ſeveral carrying-places. A canoe loſt in one of the Falls. Encamp on Point de Roche. Courſe continued. Set the nets, &c. Arrive at the Slave Lake. The weather extremely cold. Banks of the river deſcribed, with its trees, ſoil, &c. Account of the animal productions, and the

page.

the fiſhery of the Lake. Obliged to wait till the moving of the ice. Three families of Indians arrive from Atabaſca. Beavers, geeſe, and ſwans killed. The nets endangered by ice. Re-embark and land on a ſmall iſland. Courſe continued along the ſhores, and acroſs the bays of the Lake. Various ſucceſſes of the hunters. Steer for an iſland where there was plenty of cranberries and ſmall onions. Kill ſeveral rein deer. Land on an iſland named Iſle à la Cache. Clouds of muſquitoes. - 163

CHAPTER II.

Land at ſome lodges of Red-Knife Indians: procure one of them to aſſiſt in navigating the bays. Conference with the Indians. Take leave of Mr. Le Roux, and continue the voyage. Different appearances of the land; its vegetable produce. Viſit an iſland where the wood had been felled. Further deſcription of the coaſt. Plenty of rein and mooſe deer, and white partridges. Enter a very deep bay interrupted by ice. Very blowing weather. Continue to coaſt the bay. Arrive at the mouth of a river. Great numbers of fiſh and wild-fowl. Deſcription of the land on either ſide. Curious appearance of woods that had been burned. Came in ſight of the Horn Mountain. Continue to kill geeſe and ſwans, &c. Violent ſtorm. - 178

CHAPTER III.

Continue our courſe. The river narrows. Loſe the lead. Paſs a ſmall river. Violent rain. Land on a ſmall iſland. Expect to arrive at the rapids. Conceal two bags of pemmican in an iſland. A view

of

page.

of mountains. Paſs ſeveral encampments of the natives. Arrive among the iſlands. Aſcend a high hill. Violence of the current. Ice ſeen along the banks of the river. Land at a village of the natives. Their conduct and appearance. Their fabulous ſtories. The Engliſh Chief and Indians diſcontented. Obtain a new guide. Singular cuſtoms of the natives. An account of their dances. Deſcription of their perſons, dreſs, ornaments, buildings, arms for war and hunting, canoes, &c. Paſs on among iſlands. Encamp beneath a hill, and prevented from aſcending by the muſquitoes. Land at an encampment. Conduct of the inhabitants. They abound in fabulous accounts of dangers. Land at other encampments. Procure plenty of hares and partridges. Our guide anxious to return. Land and alarm the natives, called the Hare Indians, &c. Exchange our guide. State of the weather. - 189

CHAPTER IV.

The new guide makes his eſcape. Compel another to ſupply his place. Land at an encampment of another tribe of Indians. Account of their manners, dreſs, weapons, &c. Traffic with them. Deſcription of a beautiful fiſh. Engage another guide. His curious behaviour. Kill a fox and ground-hog. Land at an encampment of a tribe called the Deguthee Denees, or Quarrellers. See flax growing wild. The varying character of the river and its banks. Diſtant mountains. Perplexity from the numerous channels of the river. Determine to proceed. Land where there had been an encampment of the Eſquimaux. Saw large flocks of wild fowl. View of the ſun at midnight. Deſcription

page.

of a place lately deſerted by the Indians. Houſes of the natives deſcribed. Frequent ſhowers. See a black fox. The diſcontents of our hunters renewed, and pacified. Face of the country. Land at a ſpot lately inhabited. Peculiar circumſtances of it. Arrive at the entrance of the lake. Proceed to an iſland. Some account of it. - - 208

CHAPTER V.

The baggage removed from the riſing of the water. One of the nets driven away by the wind and current. Whales are ſeen. Go in purſuit of them, but prevented from continuing it by the fog. Proceed to take a view of the ice. Canoe in danger from the ſwell. Examine the iſlands. Deſcribe one of them. Erect a poſt to perpetuate our viſit there. The riſing of the water appears to be the tide. Succeſsful fiſhing. Uncertain weather. Sail among the iſlands. Proceed to a river. Temperature of the air improves. Land on a ſmall iſland, which is a place of ſepulture. Deſcription of it. See a great number of wild fowl. Fine view of the river from the high land. The hunters kill rein-deer. Cranberries, &c. found in great plenty. The appearance and ſtate of the country. Our guide deſerts. Large flight of geeſe: kill many of them. Violent rain. Return up the river. Leave the channels for the main ſtream. Obliged to tow the canoe. Land among the natives. Circumſtances concerning them. Their account of the Eſquimaux Indians. Accompany the natives to their huts. Account of our proviſions. - 224